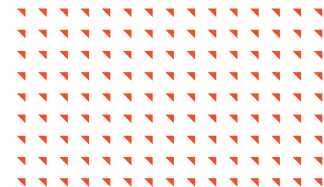




C5 CITROËN AIRCROSS



HANDBOOK

INSPIRED BY YOU

Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyCitroën** smartphone application.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address:
<http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën C5 AIRCROSS.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

All of the instructions and operating recommendations are presented here to make the most of the vehicle. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide, informing about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with the vehicle.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle





Right-hand drive vehicle



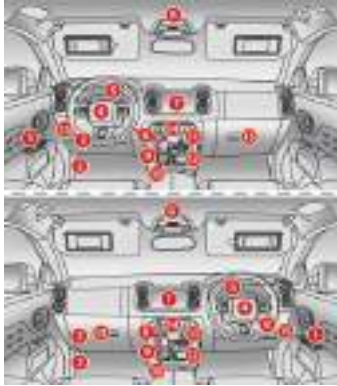
Location of the equipment/button described with a black area



Overview	■		Access	2	Lighting and visibility	4
Instruments and controls	4	Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key	35	Lighting control	79	
Eco-driving	■	Keyless Entry and Starting	37	Direction indicators	80	
		Central locking	41	Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps	81	
		Back-up procedures	41	Parking lamps	81	
		Doors	44	Automatic illumination of headlamps	81	
		Boot	44	Guide-me-home and welcome lighting	82	
		Hands-free tailgate	45	Automatic headlamp dipping	83	
		Alarm	49	Headlamp adjustment	84	
		Electric windows	51	Cornering lighting	85	
		Panoramic opening sunroof	52	Wiper control stalk	85	
				Changing a wiper blade	87	
				Automatic windscreen wipers	88	
Instruments	1		Ease of use and comfort	3	Safety	5
Instrument panels	8	Correct driving position	54	General safety recommendations	89	
Warning and indicator lamps	11	Front seats	54	Hazard warning lamps	89	
Indicators	26	Steering wheel adjustment	58	Horn	90	
Manual test	29	Mirrors	58	Emergency or assistance call	90	
Lighting dimmer	30	Rear seats	60	Electronic stability control (ESC)	91	
Trip computer	31	Heating and Ventilation	61	Advanced Grip Control	95	
Touch screen	32	Manual air conditioning	63	Hill Assist Descent Control	96	
Date and time adjustment	34	Dual-zone automatic air conditioning	64	Seat belts	97	
		Recirculation of interior air	67	Airbags	101	
		Front demist – defrost	68	Child seats	104	
		Heated windscreen	68	Deactivating the front passenger airbag	106	
		Rear screen demist – defrost	68	ISOFIX mountings and child seats	111	
		Additional Heating/Ventilation	69	i-Size child seats	114	
		Front fittings	71	Child lock	115	
		Courtesy lamps	75			
		Interior ambient lighting	75			
		Boot fittings	76			

Driving	6	Fuel tank Compatibility of fuels Towing device Towing device with quickly detachable towball Energy economy mode Snow chains Fitting roof bars Bonnet Engine compartment Checking levels Checks Advice on care and maintenance AdBlue® (BlueHDi)	7 180 181 182 183 186 186 187 188 189 189 192 194 194
Driving	6	Practical information	7 180 181 182 183 186 186 187 188 189 189 192 194 194
Driving recommendations Anti-theft protection Starting/Switching off the engine with the key Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting Electric parking brake Manual gearbox Automatic gearbox Driving mode Hill start assist Gear efficiency indicator Stop & Start Tyre under-inflation detection CITROËN ConnectedCAM® Driving and manoeuvring aids – General recommendations Speed Limit recognition and recommendation Programmable speed limiter Cruise control – particular recommendations Programmable cruise control Memorising speeds Highway Driver Assist Adaptive Cruise Control Active Lane Keeping Assist Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance Fatigue detection system Active Lane Departure Warning System Active Blind Spot Monitoring System Parking sensors Top Rear Vision – Top 360 Vision Park Assist	116 118 118 120 121 125 125 129 129 130 130 132 134 135 137 142 144 144 146 147 147 151 156 159 161 164 167 168 173		
Technical data	9	Dimensions Identification markings Engine technical data and towed loads Engines and towed loads – Petrol Engines and towed loads – Diesel	9 221 221 222 223 224
Audio equipment and telematics			
CITROËN Connect Radio CITROËN Connect Nav			
Alphabetical index			
Access to additional videos			
			
 bit.ly/helpPSA			
In the event of a breakdown	8	Warning triangle Running out of fuel (Diesel) Tool kit Temporary puncture repair kit Spare wheel Changing a bulb Changing a fuse 12 V battery Towing the vehicle	8 197 197 198 199 203 206 212 215 219

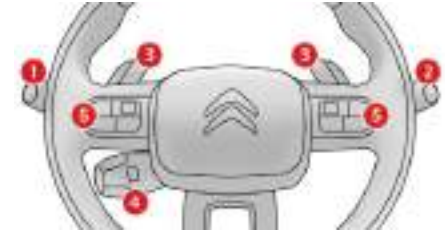
Instruments and controls



1. Door mirror and electric window control panel
2. Bonnet release
3. Dashboard fuses
4. Horn
Driver front airbag
5. Instrument panel

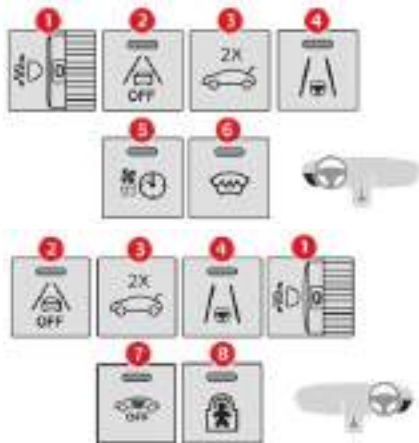
6. Courtesy lamp
Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
Sunroof and blind controls
Interior rear view mirror
Emergency and assistance call buttons
CITROËN ConnectedCAM®
7. Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav
8. Ignition switch
or
START/STOP button
9. Gearbox controls
10. Electric parking brake control
11. Wireless charger
12 V socket/USB socket
12. Driving mode (ECO, SPORT) selection buttons
Hill Assist Descent Control
Advanced Grip Control
13. Glove box
Front passenger airbag deactivation switch
14. Centre switch panel (lower and upper)
15. Side switch panel

Steering mounted controls



1. External lighting/direction indicator controls
2. Wiper/screenwash/trip computer controls
3. Steering mounted gear control paddles (with automatic gearbox)
4. Speed limiter/cruise control controls
5. Audio system setting controls

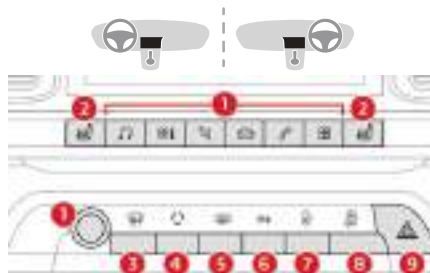
Side switch panel



1. Halogen headlamp beam height manual adjustment
2. Deactivation of the Active Lane Departure Warning System
3. Hands-free tailgate opening/closing
4. Activation of the Active Lane Keeping Assist function
5. Programmable heating operation indicator lamp
6. Activation of the heated windscreen
7. Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring alarm

8. Activation/deactivation of the electric child lock

Centre switch panel (lower and upper)



1. Touch screen controls (CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav)
2. Heated seats controls
3. Windscreen and front windows demisting
4. Manual recirculation of the interior air
5. Rear screen demisting/defrosting
6. Ventilation off
7. Locking/Unlocking from the inside
8. Deactivation of Stop & Start
9. Hazard warning lamps

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items at the back of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxides emissions back in line with regulations.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panel with dials



Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Fuel level indicator.
3. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
4. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).
5. Display screen.

Control buttons

- A. Resetting the service indicator.
Alert log display.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range associated with AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km).
Tyre pressure status information display.
- B. General lighting dimmer.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.

Colour display



1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
2. Gear efficiency and/or selector position indicator, gear and Sport and Snow modes with an automatic gearbox.
3. Display area: alert message or state of functions, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km). These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
5. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

Digital instrument panel

This instrument panel can be customised. The content and availability of information depends on the display mode selected and the vehicle's equipment.

Description

Example with the "PERSONAL" display mode.



1. Fuel level indicator.
2. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).
3. Gear efficiency indicator. Status of the automatic gearbox. Driving mode.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
6. Display of speed limit signs.

7. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
8. Engine oil temperature gauge.
9. Engine coolant temperature indicator (°Celsius).
10. Total distance recorder (miles or km).
11. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

Control button

- A.** Short press: display the alerts log, reminder of servicing information or the remaining range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km) and tyre pressure status information display.
- Long press: reset the service indicator or trip distance recorder (depending on the context).

Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, the others can alter location. For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

Whatever the display mode selected, the instrument panel displays:

- in fixed locations:
 - the analogue speedometer,
 - the fuel level indicator,
 - the engine coolant temperature indicator,
 - the distance recorders,
- in variable locations:
 - gearbox and gear efficiency indicator information,
 - the digital speedometer,
 - status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the display mode selected and active features, additional information can be displayed:

- the rev counter,
- the trip computer,
- driving aids,
- the speed limiter or cruise control,
- the media currently playing,
- navigation instructions,
- the analogue speedometer,
- engine oil level and temperature

Customisation of the instrument panel


You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel by choosing:

- a display colour,
- a display mode.

Display language and units

They depend on the configuration of the touch screen.

When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

-  As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing a display colour



- ☞ Press **Settings** in the upper bar of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select "**Colour schemes**".
- ☞ Select a display colour.

Choice of display mode



To modify the display mode of the instrument panel:

- ☞ Turn the knob located to the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the different modes on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
- ☞ Once the selected display mode appears, press on the knob to validate.

The new display mode is applied instantly. If the knob is not moved, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the instrument panel.

- "DIALS": standard display of the analogue and digital speedometers, the rev counter, the fuel level indicator, the engine coolant temperature indicator and the distance recorder.
- "NAVIGATION": standard display, additionally showing the current navigation information (map and navigation instructions).

- "DRIVING": standard display, additionally showing the current driving aid systems information.
- "MINIMAL": minimal display with digital speedometer and the distance recorders and, in the event of a warning only, the fuel level indicator and the engine coolant temperature indicator.
- "PERSONAL": minimal display and possibility of selecting optional information to be displayed in the customisable areas on the left and right.

To enter settings for the "PERSONAL" display mode and select the information to be displayed in the customisable areas of the instrument panel:

With CITROËN Connect Radio

- ☞ Press **Settings** in the upper bar of the touch screen.
- ☞ Select "**Configuration**".
- ☞ Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

With CITROËN Connect Nav

- ☞ Press **Settings** in the upper bar of the touch screen.
- ☞ Select "**OPTIONS**".
- ☞ Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".
- ☞ For each personalised display area, left and right, select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows in the touch screen:
 - "**Driving aids**".
 - "**Fault**" (empty).
 - "**Temperatures**" (engine oil).
 - "**Media**".
 - "**Navigation**".
 - "**Trip computer**".
 - "**Vigilance level**".
 - "**Rev counter**".
- ☞ Confirm to save and quit.

If the current display mode is "PERSONAL", the new selection is displayed immediately.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp can be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on equipment or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

Where a warning lamp remains lit






The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.





(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.




(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
Red warning/indicator lamps				
	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Maximum coolant temperature	Fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).
	Door(s) open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed (speed below 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).	


Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Seat belt not fastened/unfastened	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	
	Electric parking brake	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	
		Flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	Carry out (1): park on level ground (horizontally). With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in mode P . Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).
	Braking	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
				


Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Orange warning/indicator lamps			
	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault. The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed, then carry out (3).
	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor anomalies, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp, have been detected. Identify the cause of the anomaly using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For other anomalies, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major anomalies, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp, have been detected. Identify the cause of the anomaly using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible. Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.






(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.





(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	AdBlue®	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).	You must top up the AdBlue® to avoid starting being prevented , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	SCR emissions control system Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
	AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine self-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to avoid starting being prevented .
	AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine self-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To start the engine, carry out (2).







Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Engine self-diagnostic system	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) without fail .
		Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of frontal collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu.	
	Active Lane Departure Warning System	Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.	
		Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
	Active Lane Departure Warning System	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).





Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Active Lane Keeping Assist	Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Fixed.	The system is deactivated.	The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and from around 31 mph (50 km/h). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually.
	Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR adjustment is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Emergency brake fault (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power.	If automatic release is not available, use manual release.





(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.





(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.








(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Under-inflation	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	Diesel engine pre-heating	Fixed. The period of illumination depends on the climatic conditions.	The ignition is on.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Front passenger airbag (ON)	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.	In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – risk of serious injury!
	Front passenger airbag (OFF)	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "OFF" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).
	Airbags	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 or 	Low fuel level	Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message. The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards zero.	When it first comes on, there remains approximately 5 litres of fuel in the tank (reserve).	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. Never drive until completely empty , as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.
	Diesel filter	Fixed.	The Diesel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system: carry out (2) without delay.
	Particle filter (Diesel)	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	This indicates that the particle filter is beginning to saturate.	As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
		Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.	This indicates that the level in the additive tank is low.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Deactivation of the automatic functions (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated. In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by a message.	Carry out (3) if automatic application/release is no longer possible. The brake can be applied or released manually.
	Automatic application (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually.	Use the electric parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.
	Malfunction (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Carry out (3) quickly.
		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).







Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Malfunction (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
	Rear foglamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.
	Parking sensors	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.
	Foot on the clutch	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.





Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 +  +  ----- 	Hill start assist	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Power steering	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	Stop & Start	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The Stop & Start system is deactivated.	The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop. Press the button to reactivate the Stop & Start.
Green warning/indicator lamps				
	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	

(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Park Assist	Fixed.	The function is active.	
	Active Lane Keeping Assist	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	All the conditions have been met: the system is operating.
	Direction indicators	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The function has been activated in the touch screen (Driving/Vehicle menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	





Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.	
	Automatic wiping	Fixed.	Automatic front wiping is activated.	
Blue warning/indicator lamps				
	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The main beams are on.	
Black/white warning/indicator lamps				
 (grey)	Hill Assist Descent	Fixed.	The function has been activated, but is currently paused because the speed is too high.	Reduce the vehicle speed to below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Indicators

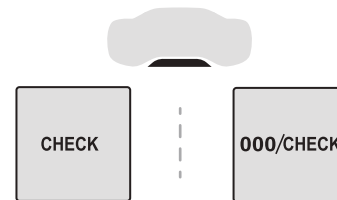
Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed on the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign "-".
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Service spanner Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
	Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
 +  	Service spanner flashing Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator



The service indicator must be reset after each service.

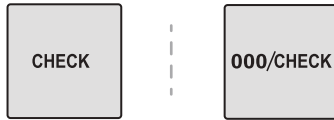
If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold this button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ release the button when =0 is displayed; the spanner disappears.

i Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time in the instrument panel.



☞ Press this button to temporarily display the service information.

i The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching the ignition on, after the servicing information, in the form of messages.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Low oil level

This is indicated by the display of a message prompting you to top up, accompanied by the Service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault

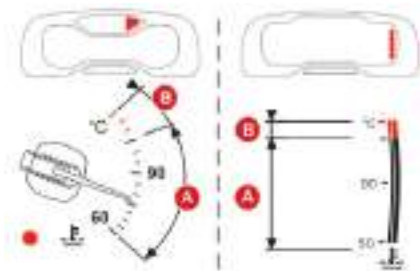
This is signalled by the display of the "Oil level measurement invalid" message in the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the associated warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in red in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

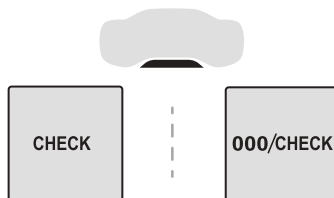
AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of the range

While the range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



☞ Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).

Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
 	A top-up is vital , there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
 	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (0 km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection



If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "Emissions fault" message.



The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the warning lamp is still on after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.

The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the display of a message ("Emissions fault: Starting prevented in x miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

! Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

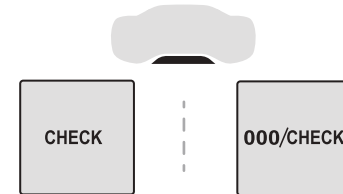
Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" is displayed.

! To be able to restart the engine, call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test in the instrument panel

This function allows you, at any time, to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.



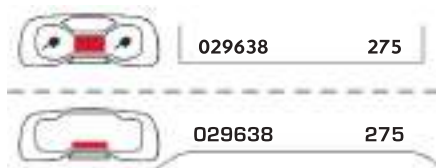
☞ With the engine running, briefly press this button.

The following information is displayed in the instrument panel:

- the engine oil level,
- when the next service is due,
- the driving range for the AdBlue and the SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- display of the state of pressure of the tyres,
- current alerts.

i This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Distance recorders



The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

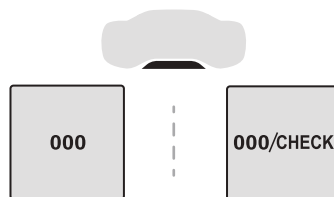
i When travelling abroad, you may need to change the units of distance and speed: The display of distance and speed must be expressed in the official unit of the country (km or miles). The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.



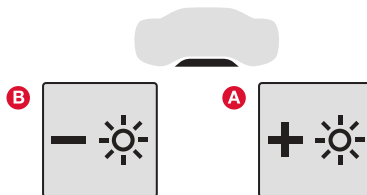
Resetting the trip recorder

☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

With buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls

and the vehicle's ambient lighting or button **B** to reduce it.

Release the button when the desired level is reached.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

- ☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
- ☞ Select "**Brightness**".
- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The settings are applied immediately.

☞ Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

- ☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
- ☞ Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.

☞ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

With CITROËN Connect Nav



- ☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

- ☞ Select "**OPTIONS**".



- ☞ Select "**Screen configuration**".

- ☞ Select the "**Brightness**" tab.



- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

OK

- ☞ Press this button to save and exit.

You can also switch off the screen:



- ☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



- ☞ Select "**Switch off screen**".

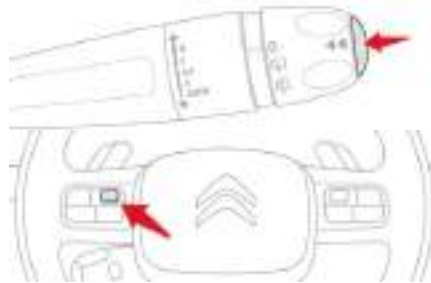
The screen goes off completely.

- ☞ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Display of data in the instrument panel



With instrument panels with dials

The display of trip computer data is selected by pressing on the end of the wiper control stalk or by rotating the thumb wheel situated to the left of the steering wheel.

With digital instrument panel

Trip computer data is displayed permanently when you select the display mode "DRIVING" or "PERSONAL", depending on version.

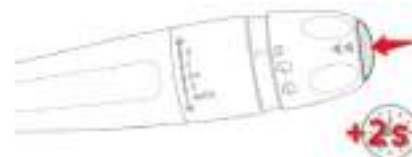
In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.

Display of the different trip computer tabs

- ☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**, to display the different tabs in turn.

- The current information with:
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter.
- Trip "1" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the first trip.
- Trip "2" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the second trip.

Trip reset



- ☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (depending on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the terrain, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

! If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Touch screen

This system gives access to:

- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice).
- the heating/air conditioning controls.
- the menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems.
- the audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.
- the display of visual manoeuvring aid functions (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.).
- Internet services and the display of associated information.

and, depending on equipment, it gives access to:

- the mode and intensity adjustment for the massage function of the front seats.
- the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Principles

Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Some menus may display across two pages: press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".



Settings for a function.



Access to additional information on the function.



Confirm.



Return to the previous page or confirm.

Menus



Radio Media.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Air conditioning.

Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on the **Manual air conditioning** and the **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.



Connected navigation.*

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Driving or Vehicle.**

Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged on two tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

* The availability of connected navigation services is confirmed by the display of the TomTom Traffic logo on the map. For more information, refer to the connected navigation section.

** Depending on equipment.



Telephone.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Applications.

Display of available connected services and access to the **Eco-coaching** function.

For the other functions, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Press with three fingers on the touch screen to show all of the menu buttons.



Volume adjustment/mute.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Information banner(s)

Certain information is displayed permanently in the touch screen banner(s).

CITROËN Connect Radio upper banner

- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menus information.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

CITROËN Connect Nav side banners

Left-hand side

- Exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.

Right-hand side

- Time.
- Notifications.
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.

Date and time adjustment

With CITROËN Connect Radio



- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select "**Configuration**".



- ☞ Select "**Date and time**".

- ☞ Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

With CITROËN Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.



- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the touch screen banner.

- ☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



- ☞ Select "**Setting the time-date**".

- ☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
- ☞ Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

Additional settings

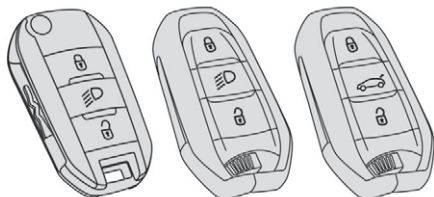
You can choose:

- The time zone.
- The display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- The summer time management function (+1 hour).
- The synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key

Remote control function



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle and the fuel filler flap,
- unlocking – opening/closing the boot,
- remote switching on of the lighting,
- activating/deactivating the alarm,
- locating the vehicle,
- opening/closing the windows,
- closing the sunroof and the blind,
- locating the vehicle,
- activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.

The remote control includes a conventional key that allows the central locking/unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock and the starting and switching off of the engine.

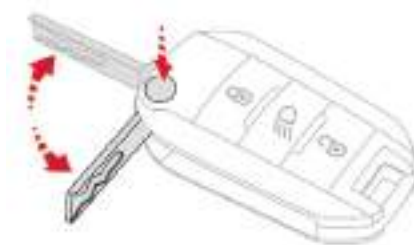
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Integral key

The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- activation/deactivation of the mechanical child lock,
- activation/deactivation of the front passenger airbag,
- back-up unlocking/locking of the doors.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting



To unfold or fold the key, press the button.

With Keyless Entry and Starting



To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Unlocking the vehicle

With the remote control



Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the welcome lighting comes on.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel filler flap

- ☞ Press the unlocking button.
- ☞ Press it again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The complete or selective unlocking and the alarm deactivation, depending on version, is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Opening the windows



Depending on version, holding the unlocking button pressed for more than 3 seconds opens the windows.

The windows stop when the button is released.

With the key

- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock **towards the front of the vehicle** to unlock.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

The settings for the selective tailgate unlocking and motorised operation are made in the vehicle configuration menu.

By default, selective tailgate unlocking is activated and and motorised operation is deactivated.



- ☞ Make a long press on the button to unlock the boot and trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate.

The doors and fuel filler flap remain locked.

i If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.

i If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button releases the tailgate.
To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

Locking the vehicle

With the remote control



- ☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

Locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not work; the vehicle locks, then immediately unlocks, identifiable by the locks making a rebound sound.

i When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked without the opening of a door or the boot, it will automatically lock itself again after thirty seconds.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated via the vehicle's configuration menu.

With the key

- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock **towards the rear** of the vehicle to lock it.

i Check that the doors and boot are fully closed.

Closing the windows and sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the locking button allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position. This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.

If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partly open, you must first deactivate the volumetric alarm protection.

For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deadlocking



! Deadlocking deactivates the exterior and interior door controls, as well as the central locking button on the dashboard. The horn remains operational. You must therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

i If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, activation is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

With the remote control



☞ Within 5 seconds of locking the vehicle, press the button again to deadlock it.

With the key

☞ Within 5 seconds of locking the vehicle, turn the key to the rear again to deadlock it.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press this button. The courtesy lamps will come on and the direction indicators will flash for a few seconds.

Welcome lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



☞ Briefly press this button. The sidelamps, dipped beam headlights, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

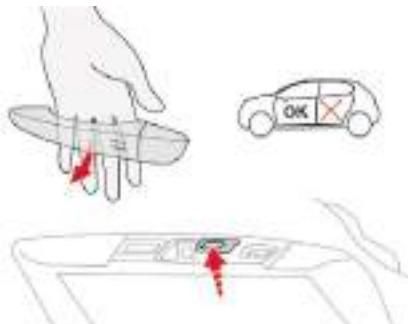
Keyless Entry and Starting



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key in the recognition zone "A".

i The electronic key is also used as a remote control. For more information on the **Remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle



Complete unlocking

☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors or press the tailgate opening control (at the left of the control).

If the motorised tailgate opening control is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

Opening the windows

Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or maintaining the press on the tailgate opening control allows the windows to be opened to the desired position.

Flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
 - deactivation of the alarm for other versions.
- Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel flap

- ☞ Pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- ☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind the handle of one of the passenger doors, with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

The setting for selective unlocking of the driver's door is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

When unlocking the driver's door, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
 - deactivation of the alarm for other versions.
- Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking of the tailgate

☞ Press the tailgate opening control to unlock just the tailgate.

The doors remain locked.

i If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the doors.



Activation or deactivation of selective unlocking of the tailgate is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

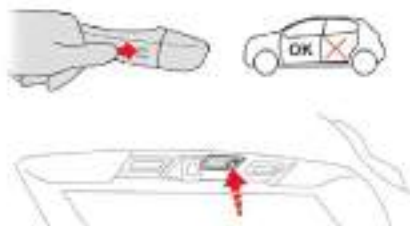
i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.
The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated via the vehicle's configuration menu.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

! In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on **Starting/ Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press on the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right of the control).

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

Closing the windows and the sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.
This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Make sure that no item or person could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the activation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

! For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave the electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Deadlocking



! Deadlocking deactivates the exterior and interior door controls, as well as the central locking button on the dashboard. The horn remains operational. You must therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

- ☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press once with your finger or thumb on the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (at the right of the control) to lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Within 5 seconds, press the door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.

Advice

! Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range of your vehicle. It might stop working. It will then be necessary to reinitialise it again.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

! Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

! Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

i Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Central locking

Manual



- ☞ Press this button to operate the central locking of the vehicle (doors, boot and fuel filler flap) from inside the vehicle. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
- ☞ Pressing the button again unlocks the vehicle completely. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more doors.

! The central locking does not take place if one of the doors is open.

i When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

To activate/deactivate this function (activated by default):



- ☞ Press the button until an audible signal is heard and a message appears in the screen.

i Transporting long or bulky objects

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle. Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- remote control battery discharged,
- remote control fault,
- battery failure,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.

In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front/rear to lock/unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the key rearwards again within 5 seconds of locking to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds confirms that the procedure has completed correctly.

- i** If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key. If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and thus ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

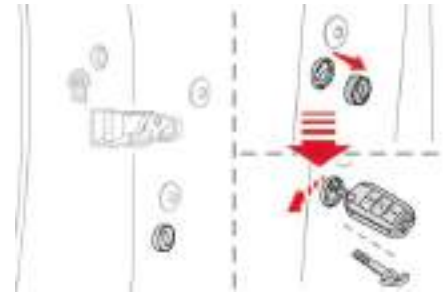
Passenger doors

Unlocking

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening handle.

Locking

- ☞ Open the door.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on. Refer to the corresponding section.

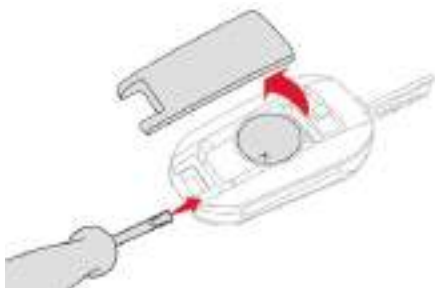


- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door (example: right-hand rear door), using the key.
- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed in the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Version without Keyless Entry and Starting Battery type: CR1620/3 volts.




Version with Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.




- ☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its housing.
- ☞ Insert the new battery with the correct polarity and clip the cover onto the housing.

☞ Reinitialise the remote control.
For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

 Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

 If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Version without Keyless Entry and Starting



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Version with Keyless Entry and Starting



- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then depress the clutch pedal fully.

☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, from mode **P**, fully depress the brake pedal.

☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.

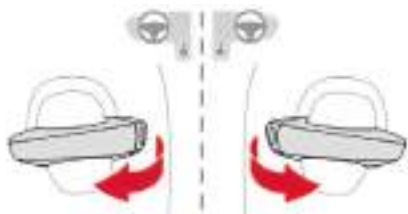
The electronic key is now fully operational again.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



☞ Pull the interior opening control of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i When selective unlocking is activated:

- opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked),
- opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

i The interior opening control on a rear door does not work if the child lock is on. For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:

- **with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h))**, a message appears in the screen.
- **with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h))**, a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Boot

Opening



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, press the left-hand button on the central tailgate control.
- ☞ Lift the tailgate.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

For more information on the **Remote control** or on the **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If there is a fault or if it is difficult to move the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it checked as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to prevent the problem becoming worse, and potentially causing the tailgate to drop and thereby inflicting serious injuries.

! The tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

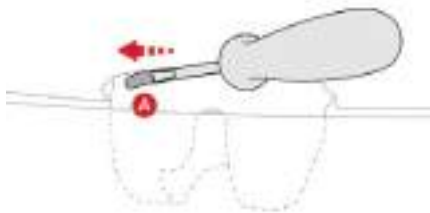
If the tailgate is not fully closed:

- **with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h))**, a message appears in the screen.
- **with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h))**, a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

To unlock the boot



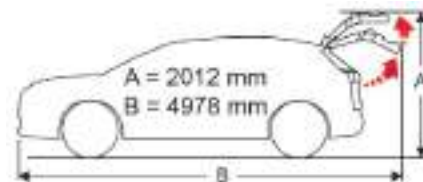
- ☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

To re-lock the boot

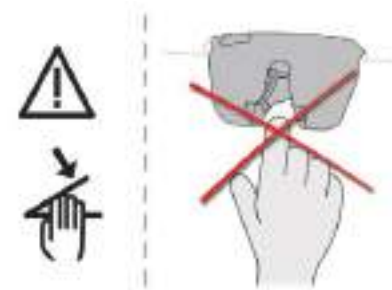
If the problem persists, the boot will remain locked after opening and closing.

Hands-free tailgate

The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



! Never introduce a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate – risk of a serious injury!

Safety anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.

Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle,
- monitor the activity of your passengers, particularly any children.

Bicycle carrier/Towing device

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on a towing device with connection of a cable to the towing socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

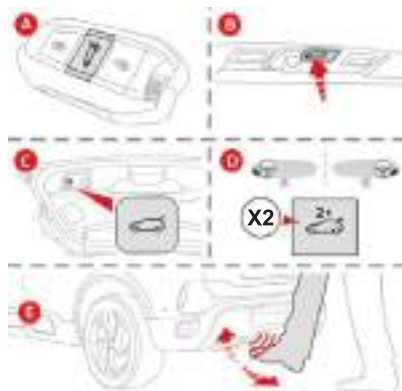
If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by CITROËN, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation



Activation/deactivation of the motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

- A. using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system,
- B. using the exterior tailgate control,
- C. using the interior tailgate control,
- D. using the control on the dashboard,
- E. using the "hands-free" access below the rear bumper.

Opening/Closing

☞ Press and hold the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

☞ Press the exterior tailgate control **B** with the electronic key on your person.

or

☞ Press the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).

or

☞ Press twice in succession on the dashboard control **D**.

or

☞ With the electronic key on your person, use the "hands-free" access **E** by performing a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper.

The command is confirmed by an audible signal.

i The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.

If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate.

The request to open the tailgate with one of the controls **A**, **B** or **E** enables you to unlock the vehicle or the tailgate alone beforehand, if selective unlocking of the boot is activated.

Closing the tailgate with the "hands-free" access function enables you to lock the vehicle.

i It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point. Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway. Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.

"Hands-Free Tailgate Access"

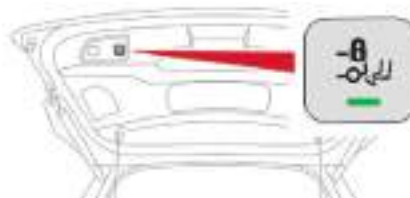


The "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function is activated/deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.

! Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the quick foot movement.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot – risk of burns!

Automatic locking using the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function



Press this button to activate/deactivate automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate using the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function (confirmed by lighting/extinction of the green indicator lamp).

Memorising an opening position

To **memorise** a position, in order to limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- ☞ move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorisation is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

i Saving is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the tailgate.

To **delete** the memorised position:

- ☞ open the tailgate to any position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (the deletion is confirmed by a long audible signal).

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated. The tailgate must be stationary. When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

i Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible. Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again. If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Manual closing of the motorised tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure of the tailgate motor**.

If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed**.

In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.

☞ Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the centre of the tailgate.

! Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides – risk of damage!

Precautions in use

! To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:

- deactivate the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu,
- or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

i In wintry conditions

To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the tailgate.

i When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Recommendations related to the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function

If several kicking movements to operate the tailgate have no effect, wait a few seconds before trying again.

The function automatically deactivates in heavy rain or following a build-up of snow.

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic pollution (smartphone, etc.).

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

The function may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towing device.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly if:

- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,
- your vehicle is being serviced,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate "Hands-Free Tailgate Access".

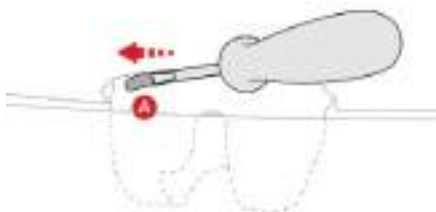
! After installing a towing device, it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop so that it is taken into account by the detection system. Otherwise, risk of "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function failure.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- ☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- **Exterior perimeter:**
The system checks whether the vehicle is opened. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.
- **Interior volumetric:**
The system checks for any variation of the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.
- **Anti-tilt:**
The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

! **Self-protection function:** the system checks for the disabling of its own components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- ☞ Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

When the monitoring system is active, the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

! If an opening (door, boot, bonnet, etc.) is incorrectly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- With the remote control:



short press



long press

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring functions remain active until the tenth successive time the alarm is triggered.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds, press this button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp flashes once per second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- ☞ Reactivate the alarm system normally.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Failure of the remote control

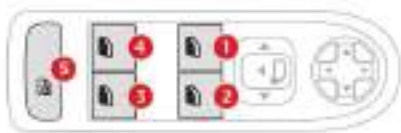
To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ Open the door; this sets off the alarm.
- ☞ Upon switching on the ignition the alarm stops. The button indicator lamp goes off.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivation of the electric window controls located at the rear seats.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

☞ To open/close the window, press/pull the switch beyond the resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows



For your children's safety, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation of the system. It remains on for as long as the deactivation is maintained. Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, or if the windows move abnormally, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each of the windows:

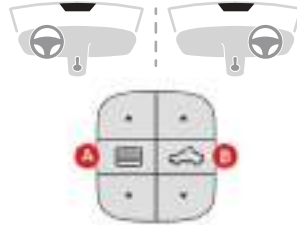
- ☞ Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- ☞ Continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the switch concerned. When the driver operates the passengers' electric window switches, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly. It is important to ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows. Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Panoramic opening sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

☞ To operate the panoramic opening sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



- A. Sunroof blind control
- B. Sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement. Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind. If the sunroof or blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind. To do this, press the switch concerned. The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed. The roof anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Precautions

! Do not put your head or arms through the open sunroof when driving – risk of serious injury!

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before opening. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice – risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Check the condition of the sunroof seals regularly (presence of dust or deposits, dead leaves, etc.).
If using a car wash, check that the sunroof is correctly closed in advance and keep the tip of the high-pressure lance at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. All intermediate positions are allowed.

i Depending on the speed of the vehicle, the partially open position may vary to improve the acoustics.

Opening and closing

- ☞ To **open** the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the **rear**.
- ☞ To **close** the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the **front**.

Operation of buttons

- ☞ Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof fully.
- ☞ Pressing the button down again stops the current movement.
- ☞ If you hold a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when you release the button.
- ☞ When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.
- ☞ When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once without passing the point of resistance opens or closes it fully.

i You can close the sunroof and windows, then the blind, by pressing and holding the door locking control. The movement stops when you release the locking control.

i Closing of the blind is limited by the position of the sunroof: the blind cannot go further than the front of the mobile glass. During simultaneous movements of the sunroof and blind, the blind automatically stops or resumes movement depending on the position of the sunroof.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, reinitialisation is required.

- ☞ Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.
- ☞ With the ignition on, fully close the sunroof and blind.
- ☞ Press and hold the front part of button **B**, until the sunroof and blind move slightly, then hold for a further 1 second before releasing.
- ☞ Wait 2 seconds and then press and hold the front part of button **B**. The blind and the sunroof will open and close, one after the other. When both are completely closed again, hold for a further 2 seconds and release.

i If there is an operating fault, restart the whole procedure.

Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the height and reach of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.



! Once these adjustments have been made, check the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Front seats

Caution when moving the front seats

! For safety reasons, only adjust seats when the vehicle is stationary.

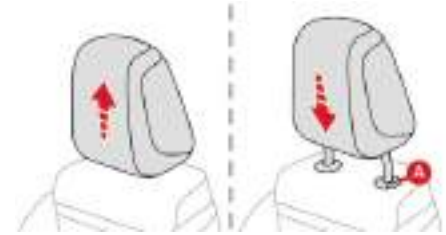
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Front head restraints

Adjusting the height

i The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

'Two-way' adjustment model



Upwards:

☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downwards:

☞ press lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

'Four-way' adjustment model



Upwards:

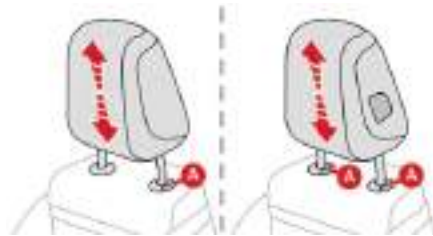
☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downwards:

- ☞ press and hold button **B** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

Adjusting the angle**'Four-way' adjustment model**

- ☞ press and hold button **B** and push the lower part of the head restraint forwards or backwards.

Removing a head restraint

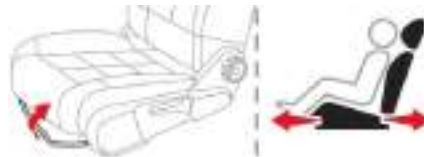
- ☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.

- ☞ Press the lug(s) **A** (depending on version) to unlock the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

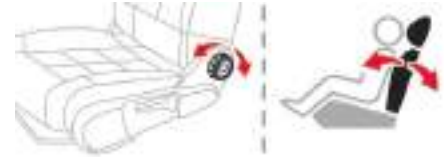
- ☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug(s) **A** (depending on version) to release the head restraint and push it down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Manually-adjusted seats**Longitudinal**

- ☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

- ☞ Release the bar to lock the seat in position on one of the runners.

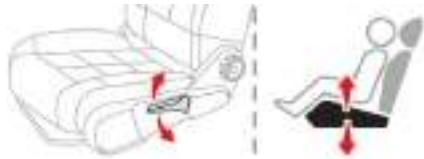
Backrest angle

- ☞ Turn the knob forwards or rearwards.

Lumbar support**(driver only)**

- ☞ Turn the knob forwards or backwards to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Height

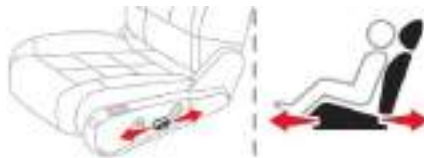


- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

Electrically-adjusted seats

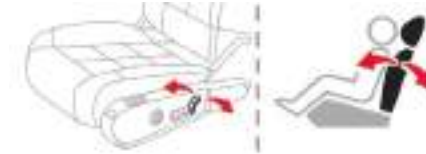
i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

Longitudinal adjustment



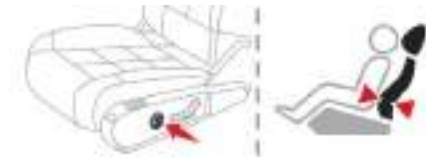
- ☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Backrest angle



- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

Electric lumbar adjustment

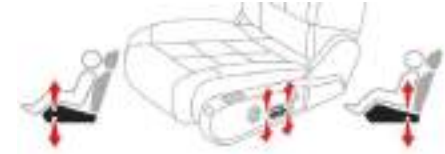


The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.



- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Seat cushion height and angle



- ☞ Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- ☞ Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

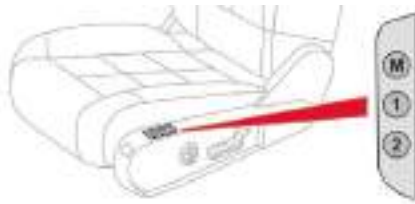
Comfort functions

Storing driving positions

(Depending on the country of sale.)

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It takes account of the electric adjustments of the seat and the door mirrors.



Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Take your seat and switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorisation. Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

With the ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

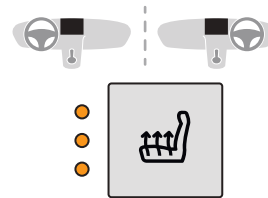
An audible signal sounds when the adjustment is finished.

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats



- ☞ Press the button corresponding to your seat.
- ☞ Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on (low/medium/high).
- ☞ Press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use is not recommended for persons with sensitive skin. There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Multi-point massage

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

The massage settings are adjusted in the touch screen.

The function is activated using the button on the front seat.



- ☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The function is activated immediately with the last settings memorised and the settings page is displayed in the touch screen.

If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its original state.

If you want to change the settings:

- ☞ select another type of massage from the five offered,
- ☞ select a massage intensity from the three levels offered: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).

The changes are applied immediately.

Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes at rest.

The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle; the indicator lamp for the button goes off.

Steering wheel adjustment



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control **A** to release the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control **A** to lock the steering wheel.

! For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.

They can also be folded for parking in narrow spaces.

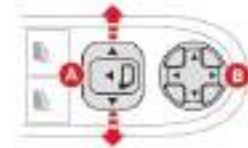
Demisting/Defrosting



If fitted to your vehicle, the demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors is done by pressing the rear screen defrosting control.

For more information on **Rear screen demist – defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to its central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.



☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** from the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. It will be necessary to pull control **A** again.

Unfolding

☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.

☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** from the central position rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors when locking or unlocking the vehicle can be deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

i If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which automatically tilts the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

They return to their initial position:

- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear,
- once the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- on switching off the engine.



This function is activated/deactivated via the "**Vehicle settings**" tab in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

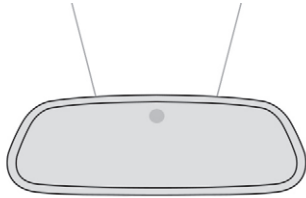
☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position



- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Rear seats

The 3 seats of the 2nd row are independent and of the same width. Their backrests are adjustable to adapt the boot load space.

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
 - ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
 - ☞ press the lugs **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press the lugs **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

To refit a head restraint:

- ☞ insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press the lugs **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.

Longitudinal adjustment

! Seat operations must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

Each seat can be adjusted individually.



- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

i Once the backrest is folded, it is no longer possible to slide the seat.

Backrest angle

Several adjustment positions are possible.



- ☞ Move the seat forward.
- ☞ Pull the strap forward, then tilt the backrest to the desired position.

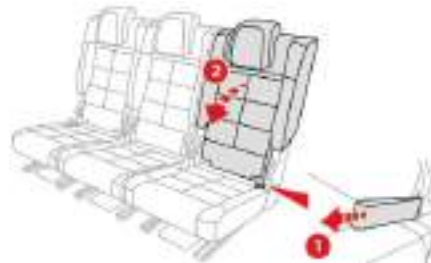
Folding the backrests

! The backrests must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.

Preliminary operations:

- ☞ lower the head restraints,
- ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☞ check that no person or object could interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),

- ☞ check that the outer seat belts are properly tensioned along the pillars, that the central belt is stowed and that the tongues of the three belts are correctly in the storage position.



- ☞ Pull the strap **1** firmly to release the backrest.
- ☞ Guide the backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

Repositioning the backrests

! Before raising the backrest of the outer seats to the normal position, please retrieve the seat belt and hold it during the operation.

- ☞ Put the backrest **2** in the upright position and push firmly to latch it home.

- ☞ Check that the release strap **1** has correctly returned to its position.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the operation.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.

The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – risk of serious injury!

3

Heating and Ventilation

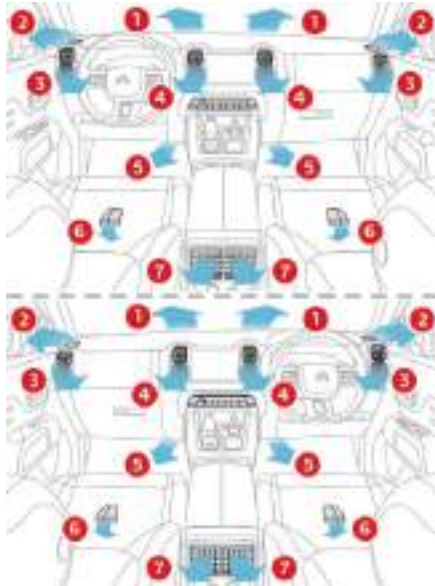
Air entry

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The controls are accessible in the "**Air conditioning**" menu of the touch screen and are also grouped together on the control panel of the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable and closable air vents.
4. Central adjustable and closable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.

6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.
7. Adjustable air vents with blower, depending on version.

Advice

i Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
 - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
 - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
 - ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off and prolonged operation with recirculation of interior air – risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

🍀 If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

i The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

i Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

☞ Ensure that the cabin filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined cabin filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

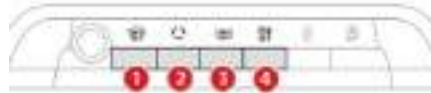
☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

i Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button located under the touch screen to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Rear screen demisting – defrosting.
4. System off.
5. Air flow adjustment.
6. Temperature adjustment.
7. Air distribution adjustment.
8. Air conditioning on/off.
9. Maximum air conditioning.

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.

Temperature adjustment

☞ Press one of the arrows **6** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, press the temperature setting button down or up until **LO** or **HI** is displayed.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **5** to increase (+) or decrease (-) the speed of the ventilation fan. The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

! Avoid driving for too long without ventilation – risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the three buttons 7.



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

Maximum air conditioning

The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the centre and outer vents, the air flow to maximum.

- ☞ Press button **9** to activate/deactivate the function; its indicator lamp comes on/goes off.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the button 1 "**Automatic Visibility Programme**", refer to the section "**Front demist – defrost**".

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
 - increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.
- ☞ Press button **8** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited. To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air. Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

System switch-off

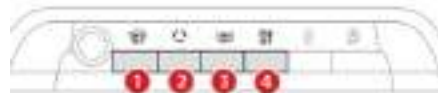
- ☞ Press button **4**; its indicator lamp comes on and all the other indicator lamps of the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

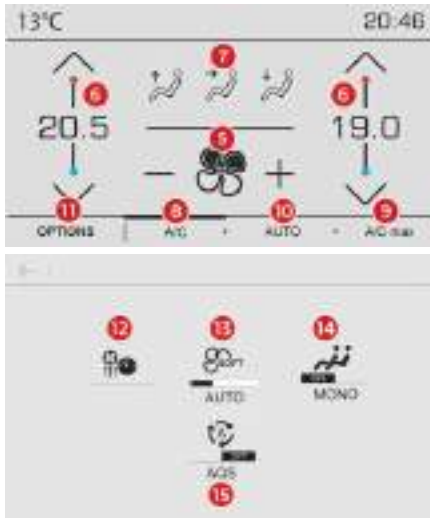
Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for long periods with the system off – risk of misting and deterioration of air quality! Pressing any button reactivates the system with the settings that were in use before the deactivation.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button located under the touch screen to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Rear screen demisting – defrosting.
4. System off.
5. Air flow adjustment.
6. Temperature adjustment.
7. Air distribution adjustment.
8. Air conditioning on/off.
9. Maximum air conditioning.
10. Activation of automatic comfort programme.

11. Access to the secondary page.
12. Passenger compartment pre-conditioning (depending on version).
13. Selection of adjustment for the automatic comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast).
14. Mono-zone/Dual-zone.
15. "AQS" (Air Quality System) function (depending on version).

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are regulated automatically.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature independently of one another.

- ☞ Press one of the buttons **6** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3 in the settings for left and right.

- i** For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, press the temperature setting button down or up until **LO** or **HI** is displayed.

Automatic comfort programme

- ☞ Press button **10** "AUTO" to activate automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to adjust the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the settings offered in the secondary page, accessible from button **11** "OPTIONS".

To change the current setting, shown by illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp, press button **13** repeatedly until the desired mode is displayed:

"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

"Fast": provides strong and effective air flow.

Use the **"Normal"** or **"Fast"** modes to ensure the comfort of passengers in the rear seats. This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamp for the last setting remains on.

Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if this was deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the button **1 "Automatic Visibility Programme"**, refer to the section **"Front demist – defrost"**.

"Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air is detected. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.

Recirculation is automatically activated when the front screenwash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

The function does not operate if the exterior temperature is below 5°C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.


To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by using button **11 "OPTIONS"**, then press button **15**.

Manual control


You can manually adjust one or more of these functions, while retaining automatic control of the other functions by the system:

- air flow, button **5**,
- air distribution, button **7**,

As soon as you change a setting, the indicator lamp for the button **10 "AUTO"** goes out.

 Press button **10** again to reactivate the automatic comfort programme.

Air flow adjustment

 Press one of the buttons **5** to increase (+) or decrease (-) the fan speed.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving for too long without ventilation – risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the three buttons **7**.



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

In **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons **7** are off.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

☞ Press button **8** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited. To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air. Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Mono-zone/Dual-zone

The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).

It is available in the secondary page by pressing button **11** "OPTIONS".

☞ Press button **14** to activate the "MONO" function; its status is displayed as "ON".

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the air flow **5** and air distribution **7** settings in the passenger compartment, for a period which depends on the battery charge.

This function does not allow the operation of the air conditioning system.

System switch-off

☞ Press button **4**.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

By reducing the air flow **5** to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the temperature required in the passenger compartment to be reached more rapidly.



☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

i The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Front demist – defrost

Automatic visibility programme

The automatic visibility programme allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



- ☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function.

When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

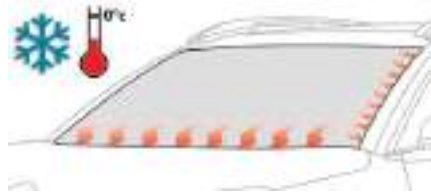
The system automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

The system allows the manual modification of air flow without causing automatic deactivation of the automatic visibility programme.

- i** With Stop & Start, when demisting – defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

- !** In wintry conditions, remove all snow or ice on the camera on the windscreen before moving off. Otherwise, this can affect the function of the equipment associated with the camera.

Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the areas alongside the windscreen pillars.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

Switching on/off



- ☞ With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

The function is active as soon as the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically each time the engine is switched off.


Rear screen demist – defrost


On/Off



- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

 Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as possible to reduce fuel consumption.

 Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Additional Heating/ Ventilation



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.



This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.

It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

You can programme the heating or ventilation to come on using the second page of the "Air conditioning" menu of the touch screen.







 Press the "Air conditioning" menu.

 Press the "OPTIONS" tab.



 Press "Temperature programming".

 Press the "Status" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

-  Press the "Parameters" tab to select "Heating" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "Ventilation" mode to ventilate the passenger compartment.
-  Then programme/preset the activation time for each selection.
-  Press "OK" to confirm.



Long range remote control

This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.

The range of the remote control is about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.



Switching on

-   Pressing and holding this button starts the heating immediately (confirmed by the temporary illumination of the green indicator lamp).

Switching off



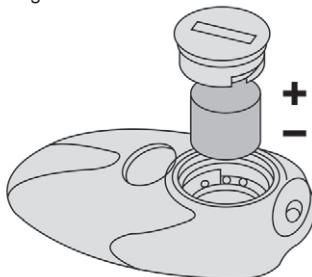
☞ Pressing and holding this button stops the heating immediately (confirmed by the temporary illumination of the red indicator lamp).

i The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal. You should then move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

If the indicator lamp in the remote control becomes orange, the state of charge of the battery is low.

If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



☞ Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.



Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

i The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

i The additional heating system is powered by the fuel in the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel in the tank. If the tank level is on reserve, the system cannot be used. The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. The heating is activated provided that:

- the battery is sufficiently charged,
- the fuel level is adequate,
- the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle.



Always switch off the additional heating while refuelling – risk of fire or explosion!

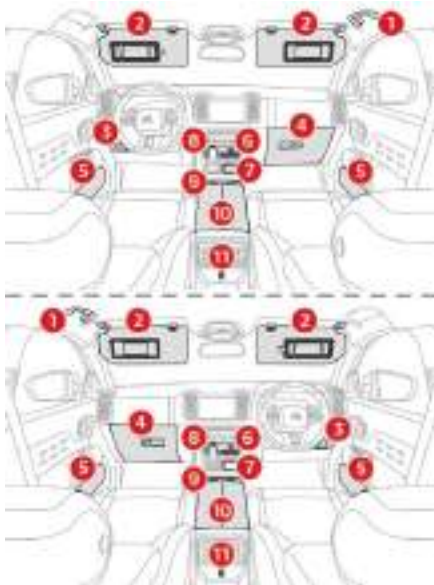


To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system. Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) – risk of fire!



Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places. Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces – risk of burns!

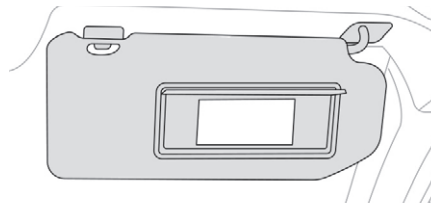
Front fittings



1. Grab handle
2. Sun visor
3. Storage compartment below the steering wheel
Card holder
4. Illuminated glove box
5. Door pockets

6. USB socket
Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket
(120W)
7. Storage compartment
8. Storage compartment or Wireless charger
9. Cup holders
10. Front armrest with storage compartment
11. USB charger socket

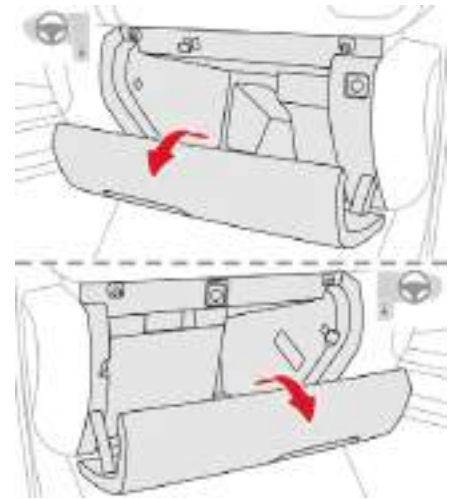
Sun visor



- ☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove box

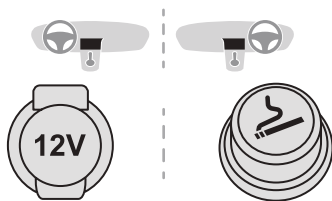
- ☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. The glove box is lit when the lid is opened.



It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.

! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front – it may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket(s)

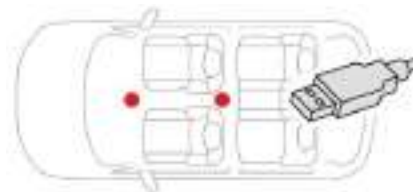


- ☞ To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.
- ☞ To use a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect an appropriate adapter.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer, etc.
After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB sockets



They allow the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, to charge the device.

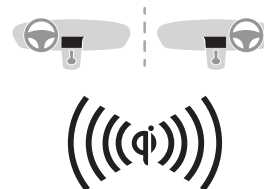


The USB socket located **at the front** also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain smartphone applications can be used on the touch screen.

To achieve the best results, it is necessary to use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering mounted controls or those of the audio system.

i When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.
For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

Wireless smartphone charger



It allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.

Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

☞ With the charging area clear, place a device at its centre.



Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green. It stays lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.



Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!

Checking operation

The status of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Status of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not correctly centred in the charging zone.

Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.
---------------	---



If the indicator lamp is lit orange:

- remove the portable device, then reposition it in the middle of the charging zone.

or

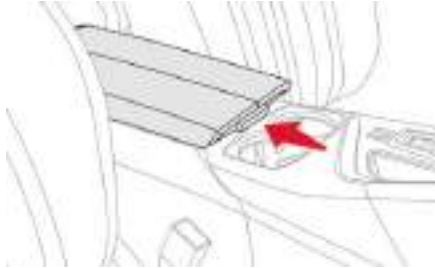
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front armrest

It includes a refrigerated storage space (depending on version) and is illuminated when the cover is opened.

Opening



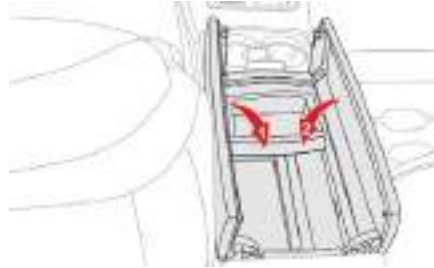
- ☞ Press the lever beneath the cover. The cover opens in two parts.

Storage



- The small removable tray can be installed in front of or behind the storage space. A ventilation nozzle circulates fresh air.

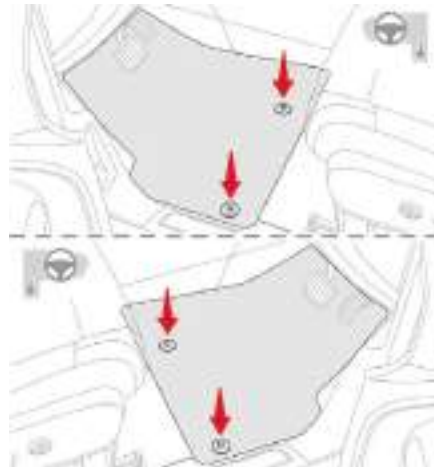
Closing



- ☞ Fold the two parts of the cover back.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing/refitting

- ☞ To remove on the driver's side, move the seat back and unclip the fixings.
- ☞ To refit, position the mat and secure it by pressing.

- ! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
 - only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
 - never fit one mat on top of another.
- The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
- The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps (depending on version)

Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- on unlocking the vehicle,
- on removing the key from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- on activating the remote control locking button, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

i When the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position. To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps



☞ With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

At night, the interior ambient lighting comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Depending on version, the ambient lighting includes:

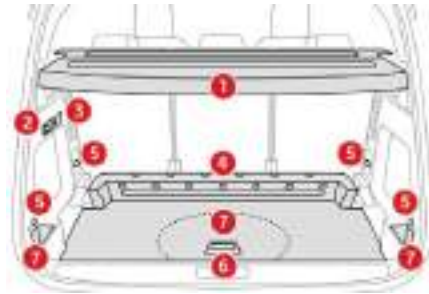
- two LEDs located in the front courtesy lamp.
- a light source in the storage compartment at the front of the centre console.
- a light source for each of the front footwells.
- illuminated bezels for the front cup holders.
- a light source for each of the interior door opening controls.

The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.



The interior ambient lighting can be activated or deactivated and its brightness adjusted in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Boot fittings



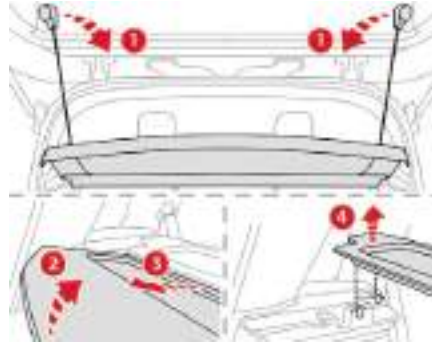
1. Load space cover
2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
3. Boot lamp
4. Movable cross-piece of the rear seats (to increase the volume of the boot)
5. Stowing rings
6. Adjustable boot floor (2 positions)
7. Storage wells/tool box under the floor

i The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets. Such nets are available as an option or as an accessory. For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer. For the installation of a high load retaining net, refer to the corresponding section.

Load space cover

It is in two parts:

- a fixed part with an open storage space,
- a movable part which rises when the boot is opened, with an open storage space.

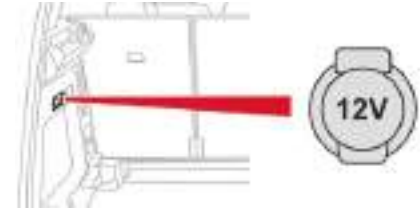


To remove the load space cover:

- ☞ unhook the two cords **1**,
- ☞ gently lift the movable part **2**, then unclip it on each side **3**,
- ☞ unclip the fixed part on each side **4**, then remove the load space cover.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adapter.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

High load retaining net

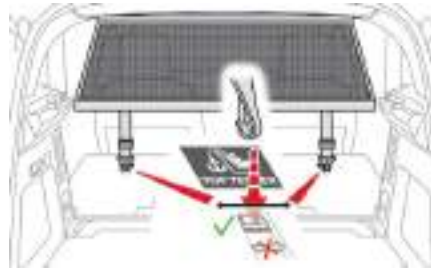


This removable net allows the entire loading volume up to the roof to be used:

- behind the front seats (1st row) when the rear seats are folded down,
- behind the rear seats (2nd row) when the load space cover is removed.

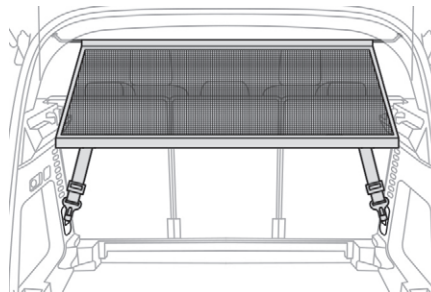
i It offers protection to the occupants when very sharp braking occurs.

Behind the front seats



- ☞ Fold down the rear seats.
- ☞ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into the fixing points in the roof.
- ☞ Attach the net's straps to the upper anchoring points, located in the housing of the Top Tether fixings.
- ☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

Behind the rear seats

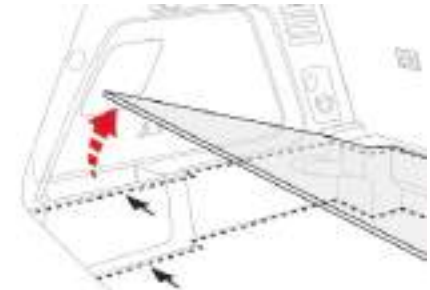


- ☞ Remove the load space cover.
- ☞ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into the fixing points of the roof.
- ☞ Attach the straps of the net to the lower rings, located on each side trim of the boot.
- ☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

2-position boot floor

This two-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:

- High position (**100 kg max**): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
- Low position (**150 kg max**): maximum boot volume.

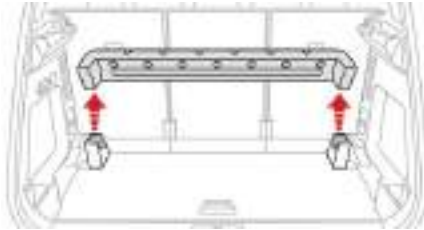


3

To change the height:

- ☞ Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- ☞ Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.

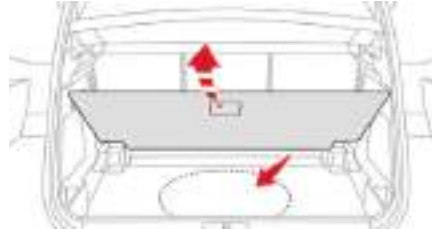
i Ensure that the boot is empty before moving the boot floor.



To increase the boot volume with the floor in the low position:

- ☞ Pull the cross-piece of the rear seats up vertically to the level of the markings to remove it.
- ☞ To put it back in place, push it as far as it will go, until it engages.

Storage well



- ☞ Raise the boot floor as much as possible to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- a temporary puncture repair kit with the vehicle tools,
- a spare wheel with the vehicle tools.

Boot lighting



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

- i** The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
 - when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
 - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
 - with the engine running, unlimited.

Lighting control

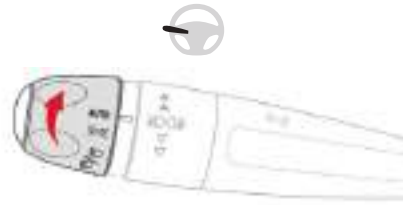
i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

i If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

i **Travelling abroad**
The design of the dipped beam headlamps allows, without modification, driving in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.

! Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

Main lighting

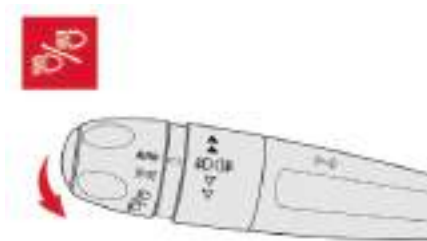


AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps/
Daytime running lamps.

 Sidelamps only.

 Dipped or main beam headlamps.

Headlamp dipping





Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

Foglamps

Rear foglamps




 They operate with the dipped or main beam headlamps on.

 Rotate the ring forwards to switch them on and rearwards to switch them off.

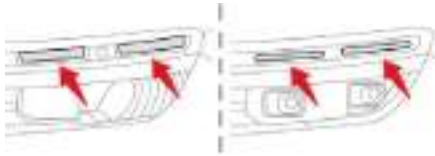
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position), the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

Front and rear foglamps



 They operate with the dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps



The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "AUTO" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at "AUTO" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the "AUTO" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

4

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Automatic

With the ring in the "AUTO" position, if the brightness is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



The activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Manual



Switching on/off

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk to switch the function on/off.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Welcome lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



☞ Make a short press on this remote control button.

The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lighting immediately.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the mirror and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on/off



When the front courtesy lamp switch is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

- on unlocking the vehicle,
- on opening a door,
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

Whatever the position of the front courtesy lamp switch, they also come on with the exterior welcome lighting and the guide-me-home lighting.

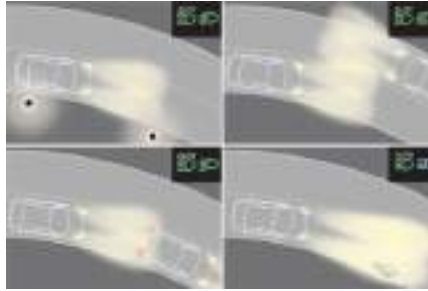
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Automatic headlamp dipping

This system automatically changes between dipped and main beam headlamps according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you exceed 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.



Activation/Deactivation

☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



☞ In the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dip**".

Until deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode. The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is kept on, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function. As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:

- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to main beam,

- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the function, flash the headlamps again.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

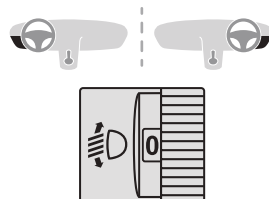
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Headlamp adjustment

Manual adjustment of the halogen headlamps

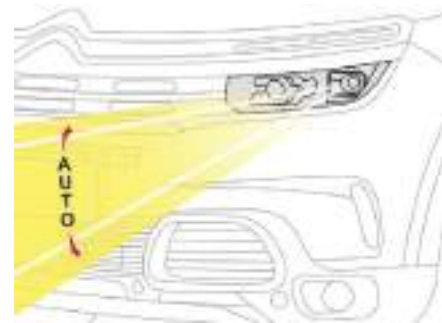


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0** Driver only or driver + front passenger.
- 1** 5 people.
- 4** 5 people + loads in the boot.
- 5** Driver + loads in the boot.

i The initial setting is position "0".

Automatic adjustment of "Full LED" technology headlamps



This system automatically adjusts the height of the beams from this type of headlamp, according to the load in the vehicle, to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users.



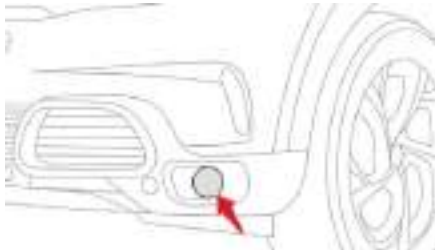
If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps – risk of electrocution!

Cornering lighting



If fitted to the vehicle, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting

Activation/Deactivation



The cornering lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
- or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Wiper control stalk Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:

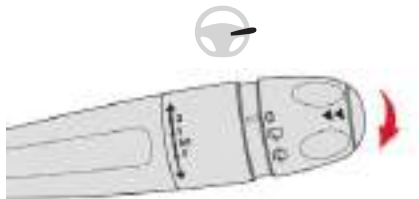
- automatic windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

i In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

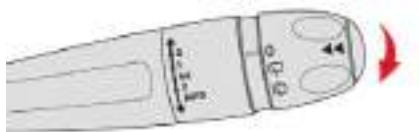
! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

4

With manual wiping




With AUTO wiping




Windscreen wipers

To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

- 2** Fast wiping (heavy rain).
- 1** Normal wiping (moderate rain).
- Int** Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
- 0** Off.

 Single wipe (press down or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO  Automatic wiping (press down, then release).
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Rear wiper



To select the rear wiper: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.

-  Off.
-  Intermittent wipe.
-  Wash-wipe.

Turn the ring fully; the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper automatically operate for a set duration.


Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle settings menu in the screen. This function is activated by default.

! In the event of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle parameters menu.

Front screenwash

 Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

The screenwash and windscreen wiper operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled. Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

i The screenwash jets are integrated in the tips of each arm. The screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid. In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the liquid and on the exterior brightness, the liquid spray may be hardly noticeable.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty. Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper blade



- ☞ Within one minute of switching off the ignition, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- ☞ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- ☞ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations. Do not touch the wiper blade as you may cause irreparable damage. Do not release them while moving them – risk of damaging the windscreen!

- ☞ Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

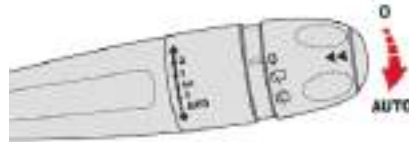
- ☞ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ☞ Clean the rear window using screenwash fluid.
- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear window.

Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.

Detection of rainfall is by means of a sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

Switching on



- ☞ Give the control stalk a brief push downwards.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

AUTO This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Switching off

- ☞ Give the control stalk a further brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

AUTO This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

i The automatic windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with automatic wiping, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode. Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor linked to the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen. Switch off the automatic wipers when using an automatic car wash. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic windscreen wipers.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshop, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

5

Hazard warning lamps



! When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the force of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.

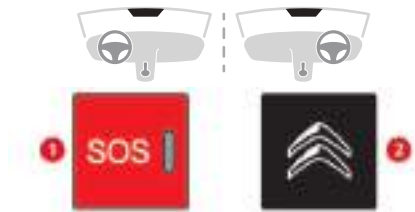
It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call

In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

The flashing LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests the appropriate public emergency services to be sent**. In countries where the service is not operational, or where the locating service has been expressly refused, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

* In accordance with the general conditions of service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and of telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.

If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

- i The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

Press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down (confirmed by a voice message**).

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request (confirmed by a voice message).

** As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and of telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation

Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing buttons **1** and **2** and then a single press of button **2** to confirm.

- i If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

- i For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

- i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control programme comprising the following systems:

- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

This system allows control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

i The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of grip.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate these systems as soon as the level of grip permits.

With Advanced Grip Control



☞ Place the dial in this position.

With the touch screen



The deactivation is carried out via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



It is confirmed by the illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and the display of a message.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or above 31 mph (50 km/h).

Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually.

With Advanced Grip Control



☞ Place the dial in a different position to this.

With the touch screen



The reactivation is carried out via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



It is confirmed by this warning lamp going out in the instrument panel and the display of a message.

Malfunction



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding both the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components and the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control (ESC) must not have any faults.

If the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer at speeds between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces the engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.

To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towbar device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault

Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It should not encourage the driver to take risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or drive at too high a speed.

In certain cases, snaking of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer. When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden snaking of the trailer.

Advanced Grip Control

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand. This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during touring use).

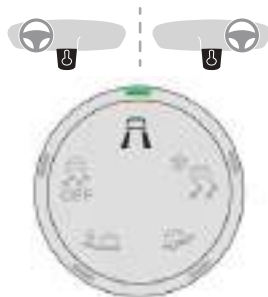
Associated with all-season M+S (Mud and Snow) tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, adhesion and traction.

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes



Standard (ESC)



This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow



This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)



This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand



This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.



You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "OFF" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

Recommendations

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Hill Assist Descent Control

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud, etc.) or a steep gradient.

This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.

During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

For the system to activate, the slope must be greater than 5%.

The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.

Otherwise engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling. With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.



- The system is not available:
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h),
 - if the speed of the vehicle is being controlled by the Adaptive Cruise Control, depending on the type of gearbox.

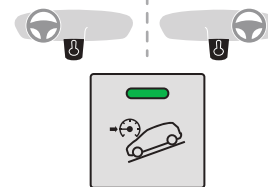
Operation

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or when moving at speeds up to approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).



With instrument panels with dials



To select the system, at a speed below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lamp comes on; up; this indicator lamp appears in green in the instrument panel.

The system becomes active at a speed below 19 mph (30 km/h).

With digital instrument panel



To select the system, at a speed below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its green indicator lamp comes on; this indicator lamp comes on in grey in the instrument panel.



The system becomes active at a speed below 19 mph (30 km/h); this indicator lamp comes on in green in the instrument panel.

When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:



- if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly,
- if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

On a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.

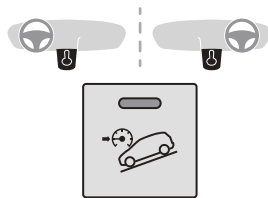
The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.

If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the green indicator lamp in the button remains on.

Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.

You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off



Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp also goes off in the instrument panel.

Above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

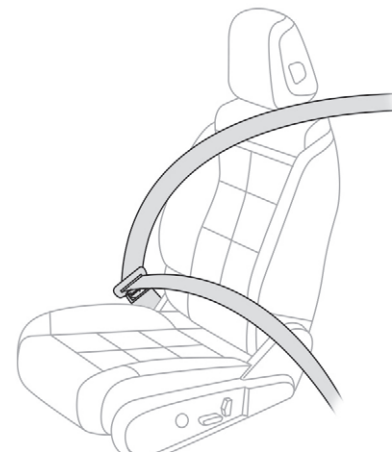
Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the system, a message is displayed in the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on. The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Fastening



- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Height adjustment



- ☞ To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.

The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

! Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts, check that:

- the outer seat belts are correctly in the storage position, lying vertically along the pillar,
- the central seat belt is stowed.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.
- ☞ On the side seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Rear central seat belt

The seat belt for the rear central seat is integrated into the roof.

Installation



- ☞ Pull the strap and insert tongue **A** into the right-hand buckle (which is on your left when you are seated in the vehicle).
- ☞ Insert tongue **B** into the left-hand buckle (which is on your right when you are seated in the vehicle).
- ☞ Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

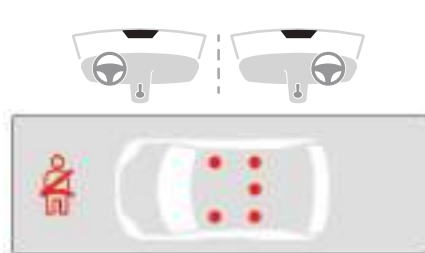
Removal and storage

! Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts, check that the outer seat belts are properly tensioned and attach the tongues to their anchorage points. The central seat belt must be completely reeled in.

- ☞ Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the black button on buckle **A**.

- ☞ Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened alerts



Not fastened/unfastened warning lamp



It comes on in red in both the instrument panel and the front passenger airbag and seat belts warning lamps display, once the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification warning lamp



It comes on in the display: the illuminated red warning lamps indicate the location of the not fastened or unfastened seat belts.

Front seat belts not fastened alerts

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding location warning lamps light up if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belts. At speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for two minutes. After that period, these warning lamps remain lit until the seat belts have been fastened.

Seat belts unfastened alert

After the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding location warning lamps light up if the driver and/or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts. At speeds above 12 miles (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for two minutes. After that period, these warning lamps remain lit until the seat belts have been refastened.

Advice

- ! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not interchange the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role fully. The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to automatically adjust to your shape. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used. The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly. After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified in order not to affect its performance.

! Recommendations for children

Use a child seat appropriate to the child's age, weight and size.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Servicing

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

! In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and, if necessary, replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters at the front seats and at the rear outer seats.

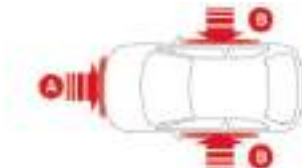
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

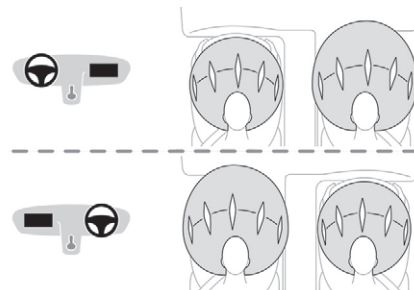


- Front impact zone.
- Side impact zone.

i The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.

This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

i These front airbags are adaptive. In particular, their hardness will decrease in the presence of an occupant of shorter height, with the seat adjusted to a forward longitudinal position.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

* For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

Lateral airbags

At the front



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact

to mitigate the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

They deploy on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must only be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed.

The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

! Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

! Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

! Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact the CITROËN network. Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary. The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

i The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

i **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

! Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.
At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Child seat at the front



When a child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust this seat to the **highest position**, in the **rearmost longitudinal position**, with the **backrest straightened**.

"Rearward facing"



! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

"Forward facing"



! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

! Children at the rear

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- the "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest. For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it. A child seat with ISOFIX or i-Size mountings must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

! Children at the front

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

! Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. We recommend using a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock". Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

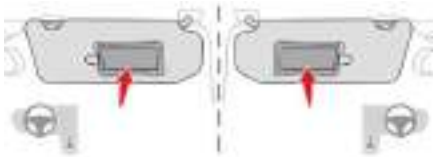
As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Warning label – Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, repeated by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG. This could cause the DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY of the CHILD.

Passenger airbag OFF

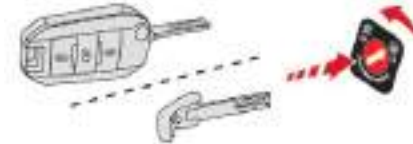


For more information on the **Airbags**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivating/reactivating the front passenger airbag

Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.

The control is located in the glove box.



With the ignition off,

- ☞ To deactivate, turn the control to the "OFF" position.
- ☞ To reactivate, turn the control to the "ON" position.

When the ignition is switched on:



This indicator lamp comes on and remains lit to signal the deactivation.

Or



This indicator lamp comes on for about a minute to signal the activation.

! To guarantee the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing" and "Forward facing"



When a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" or the "rearward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.



Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

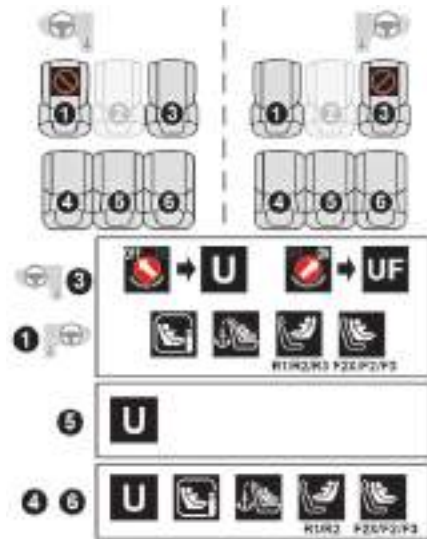
Summary table for installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats

As required by European regulations, this table gives the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the larger **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers				
	Front seats		Rear seats		
	1	3 (b), (c), (e)	4	5	6
	3	1 (b), (c), (e)	4	5	6
Position compatible with a universal (a) child seat	no	yes (f)	yes	yes	yes
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat	no	yes	yes	no	yes
Position equipped with a TOP TETHER fixing	no	yes	yes	no	yes
" Carrycot " type of child seat	no	no	no	no	no
"Rearward facing" ISOFIX child seat	no	R3 (d)	R2	no	R2
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat	no	F3 (d)	F3	no	F3

Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**.
- A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
- A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.



Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger's airbag **deactivated**.



Front passenger's airbag **activated**.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing"**.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved for "forward facing" use**.



Seat position where securing an **i-Size** child seat is authorised.



Presence of a **TOP TETHER** anchoring point at the rear of the backrest, allowing a **universal ISOFIX "forward facing" child seat** to be secured.



ISOFIX "rearward facing" child seat:

- **R1:** ISOFIX child seat for an **infant**.
- **R2:** ISOFIX child seat **small size**.
- **R3:** ISOFIX child seat **large size**.



ISOFIX "forward facing" child seat:

- **F2X:** ISOFIX child seat for **toddlers**.
- **F2:** ISOFIX child seat **low height**.
- **F3:** ISOFIX child seat **tall height**.

- Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- To install a **"rearward facing"** child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag **MUST** be deactivated **"OFF"**.
- Only a **"forward facing"** child seat of group 1, 2 or 3 is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated **"ON"**.
- Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat. Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.
- It is forbidden to install a **"forward facing"** child seat of group 0 or 0+ at this seat position (weight of the child less than 13 kg) if the front passenger's airbag is activated **"ON"**.
- For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the maximum height.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.





The child is restrained by the seat belt.

A version with a removable backrest may be used for children weighing more than 25 kg.

However, for better protection, use a booster seat with backrest for all children weighing up to 36 kg.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** according to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b)) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat		Deactivated "OFF"	U (1)	U (1)	U (1)	U (1)
			Activated "ON"	X	UF (1)	UF (1)	UF (1)
Row 2 (d) (e)		 		U	U	U	U

U Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

UF Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "forward facing".

X Seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

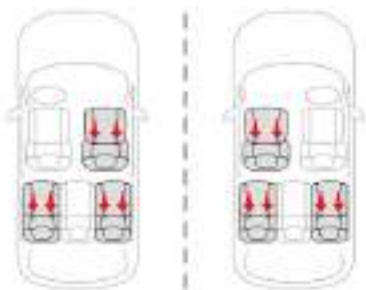
(d) To install a child seat at the rear, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", move the front seat forward, then adjust the backrest to an upright position to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

(e) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre** rear passenger seat.

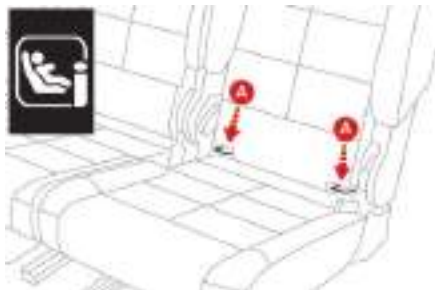
(1) Adjust the height to the maximum height.

"ISOFIX" mountings

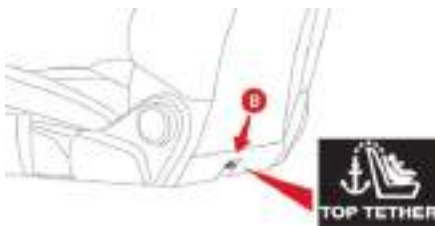
The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



Front seat



Rear seats

- one ring **B**, located behind the seat and indicated by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- ☞ pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- ☞ secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**,
- ☞ tighten the upper strap.

5

- | When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

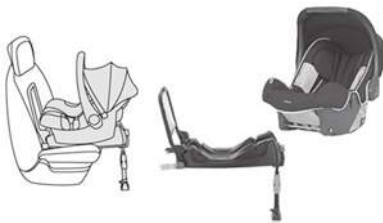
i For information about the installation possibilities for ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"
(size category: **E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.

Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats.

The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"
(size category: **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed only in the "forward facing" position. Is attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats. The head restraint on the outer rear seat must be fully raised.

Three shell angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Summary table of locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the i-Size logo.

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat position			Front passenger airbag									
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat (b)		Deactivated "OFF"		X	IL			IL		IUF/IL	
			Activated "ON"		X	X			X		IUF/IL	
Row 2	Outer rear seats (c)		X		X	IL		X	IL	IUF/IL		
	Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

- IUF** Seat suitable for installing an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.
- IL** Seat suitable for installing an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which is either:
 - "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
 - "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
 - a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

- X** Seat not suitable for installing an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.
- (a)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seat position.
- (b)** Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.
Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.
- (c)** To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest tilted.

Locations for i-Size child seats





i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position, the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat (b)		Deactivated "OFF"	i-U
			Activated "ON"	i-UF
Row 2 (c)	Outer rear seats			i-U
	Centre rear seat			Not i-Size

i-U Suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing" and "rearward facing".

i-UF Only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category which are "forward facing".

- (a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seat position.
- (b) Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.
Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.
- (c) To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest tilted.

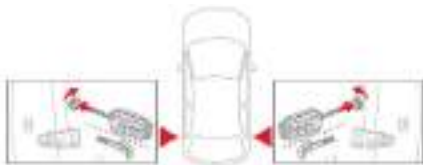
Manual child lock

Manual system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.

It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

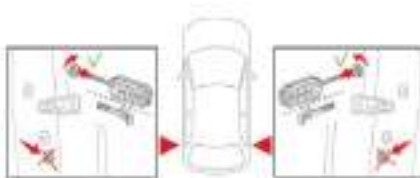
Locking



- ☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
 - to the right on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

- ☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
 - to the left on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the right on the right-hand rear door.



! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock



Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.

Activation/Deactivation



5

With the ignition on:

- ☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp remains on for as long as the child lock is activated. A message confirms the activation.
It is still possible to open the doors from the outside.
- ☞ Press this button again; its indicator lamp remains off for as long as the child lock is deactivated. A message confirms the deactivation.

Driving recommendations

- ☞ Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- ☞ Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- ☞ Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- ☞ During long trips, take a break every two hours.

Important!

! Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

! Never park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.). The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

- ☞ check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- ☞ deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- ☞ drive as slowly as possible without stalling.

In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),

- ☞ do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

i Respect the maximum towable weights. **At altitude:** reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the decreased air density at altitude reduces engine performance.

! **New vehicle:** do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

i If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

i If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill increases the temperature of the coolant. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The cooling capacity of the fan does not increase with engine speed.

☞ Reduce speed and lower the engine speed, so as to limit the heating-up.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind the increased susceptibility to the wind that the vehicle will have.

Anti-theft protection

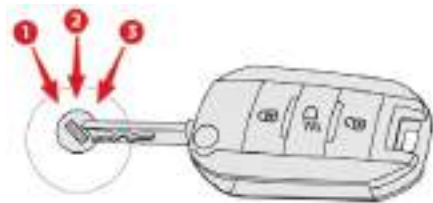
Electronic immobiliser

The keys include an electronic engine immobiliser system, whose secret code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact the CITROËN dealer.

Starting/Switching off the engine with the key

Key ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

- ! Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

- ! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Starting the engine

Parking brake applied:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then depress the clutch pedal fully.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal fully.

- ☞ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- ☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

- ! In certain cases, you may have to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine starts, release the key.

- ! With petrol engines, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

- ☞ With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine starts, release the key.

i In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1 - Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc.

i For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Key left in

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

- i** The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment. If it is not detected, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or stopped.
- If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.


Starting the engine



- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral and depress the clutch pedal fully.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and press the brake pedal.

- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is below zero and/or the engine is cold, starting will only occur once the preheater warning lamp is off.

 If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ☞ You should keep the pedal fully depressed and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.

In some circumstances, you are alerted by a message that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, to help unlock the steering column.

- i** With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column. On certain versions with the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P**.

- i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

- !** Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

- !** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Switching the ignition on without starting



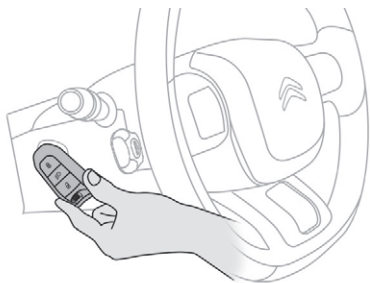
With the electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine (turning on the instrument panel and accessories such as the audio system and the lighting).

- ☞ Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.



- ☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off

When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- ☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

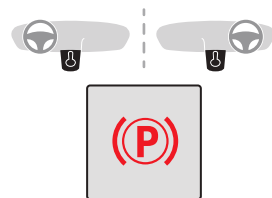
Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

On certain versions with the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the steering column does not lock.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



Any time that the engine is running, the driver can take over to apply or release the parking brake by operating the control lever:

- ☞ by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
- ☞ by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal, to release it.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and on the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake applied".

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear. As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed. If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and with a manual gearbox, engage a gear. When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and select mode **P** with an automatic gearbox. For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ☞ press the brake pedal,
- ☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

☞ pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.



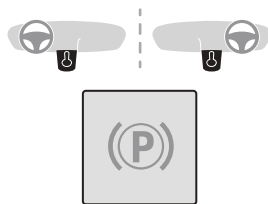
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.



With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.



Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

! Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

i With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released

- ☞ Switch off the engine.
Illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever confirm the application of the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- ☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked. For further information on the **Automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, when mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound if the driver's door is opened. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal.

- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off).

Emergency braking

In the event of a fault with the brake pedal or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, driver under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.

The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking. If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the trigger under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

i Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

! As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine, always select neutral and depress the clutch pedal.

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

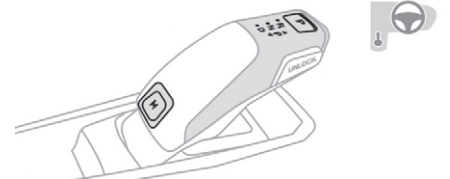
- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engagement of 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8)

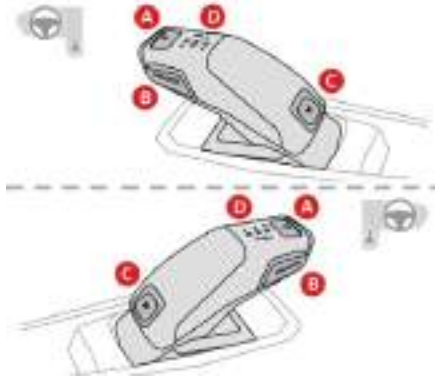
Automatic 6 or 8-speed gearbox with a push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles situated behind the steering wheel.

Gearbox selector positions



- P.** Park.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: in certain car washing machines, when towing the vehicle, etc.
- D.** Automatic mode.
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
- M.** Manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering mounted controls.

Push selector



- A. Button **P**.
To put the gearbox into Park mode.
- B. **Unlock** button.
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal.
Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.
- C. Button **M**.
To change from automatic mode **D** to permanent manual mode.
- D. Gearbox state indicators (**P**, **R**, **N**, **D**).

Move the selector by pressing it forward (**N** or **R**) or rearward (**N** or **D**) once or twice, if necessary going beyond the point of resistance.

The push selector returns to its initial position when released.

For example, to change from **P** to **R**, you can either push forward twice without going beyond the point of resistance or push just once going beyond the point of resistance:

- In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
- In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering mounted control paddles allow the driver to change gear manually.

They cannot be used to engage neutral or to select or come out of reverse.



- ☞ Pull the "+" or "-" paddle towards you and release to change up or down a gear.

Displays in the instrument panel

With the ignition on, the state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:

P: park.

R: reverse.

N: neutral.

D1...D8: automatic mode.

S: Sport programme

M1...M8: manual mode.

-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into mode **P**.

The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal and/or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time – risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chocks supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Unlocking the gearbox

- From mode **P**:
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- From neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal, select another mode.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Slow down until you come to a stop.
- ☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ While maintaining the presses, select mode **R**.

Manual mode

Switching to the mode:

- ☞ with mode **D** selected in advance,
- ☞ press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Exiting the mode:

- ☞ push forwards once to return to **D**.
- or
- ☞ press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Switching off the ignition

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheeling

To put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, with the engine switched off:

- ☞ with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select **N**,
- ☞ switch off the engine,
- ☞ within 5 seconds, switch the ignition on again,
- ☞ with your foot on the brake pedal, push the selector forward or back once to confirm **N** and manually release the electric parking brake,
- ☞ switch off the ignition.

After this time limit, the gearbox engages mode **P**; it is then necessary to restart the procedure.

i If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the exterior temperature, the profile of the road, the load on the vehicle and the style of driving. For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, push the accelerator to the floor (kick-down). The gearbox shifts down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

The steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the road and engine speed permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the road speed and engine speed permit.

Moving off

From mode **P**:

- ☞ Fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ Push once or twice rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- ☞ Fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or while pressing the **Unlock** button push forward to engage reverse **R**.

Then, from **D** or **R**:

- ☞ Release the brake pedal.
- ☞ Accelerate progressively to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

i In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), it is recommended that the engine be allowed to run for a few minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically and immediately. However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a duration of 5 seconds (allowing for the process of putting the vehicle to free-wheeling). Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.



The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those in the instrument panel.

Operating faults

Gearbox operating fault



This is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, when the ignition is switched on.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

The gearbox switches to back-up mode: mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering-mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a pronounced jolt when engaging reverse. This does not present any risk for the gearbox.

Selector operating fault

Minor malfunction



You are alerted by this warning lamp lighting up, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive cautiously and go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In certain cases, the selector lamps may not come on, but the state of the gearbox is still displayed in the instrument panel.

Major malfunction



You are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp.

! Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from the traffic, and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. When the ignition is switched off, the gearbox goes into mode **P** automatically.

Driving mode



- 1. ECO.**
Press this button to activate/deactivate "ECO" mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).
- 2. SPORT.**
Press this button to activate/deactivate "SPORT" mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

When the message disappears, the selected mode is activated.

i Each mode is independent and they cannot be activated simultaneously. Activation of one mode deactivates the other.

"SPORT" mode (depending on version)

With the engine running, when **SPORT** mode is activated, the gearbox delays changing up for a more dynamic driving style.

Activating **SPORT** mode is not recommended in the following situations:

- ASR/DSC deactivated,
- low fuel level reached,
- low AdBlue level reached.

In mode **D**, pressing this button activates the **SPORT** programme.

"S" appears in the instrument panel.

Pressing this button again deactivates the function.

i Pressing this button has no effect when towing a connected trailer.

"ECO" mode

This allows fuel consumption to be reduced. With the EAT8 gearbox, "free-wheeling" mode may activate to save fuel. Take your foot fully off the accelerator pedal to anticipate slowing down.

i **SPORT** or **ECO** mode is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Hill start assist

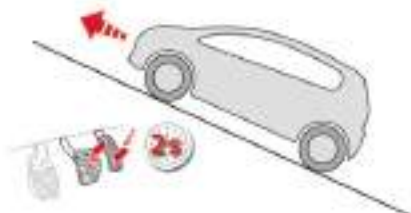
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

It is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase. If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake warning lamp is on fixed on the instrument panel.

! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

With a **manual gearbox**, if you are in first gear or in neutral.

With an **automatic gearbox**, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears.

Gear engagement recommendations are only optional. In fact, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.

This function cannot be deactivated.

i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

i The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.

Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

**STOP & START SYSTEM****Opening the bonnet**

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

! Driving on flooded roads

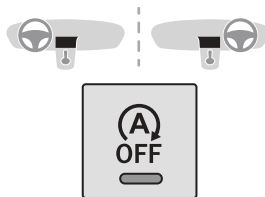
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

To deactivate/reactivate the function:



☞ Press the button.

A message in the instrument panel confirms the change of state.

When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator lamp is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lamps

Function activated.



Function deactivated or malfunction.

Operation**Main conditions for operation**

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically goes into standby as soon as the driver indicates the intention of stopping.

- **With a manual gearbox:** at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h), with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
- **With an automatic gearbox:**
 - With the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) for BlueHDi 180 S&S versions, or below 2 mph (3 km/h) for PureTech 130/175 S&S and BlueHDi 130 S&S versions, with the brake pedal depressed.
 - With the gear selector in mode **N**, at a speed of 0 mph (0 km/h).
 - With the gear selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal released, at a speed of 0 mph (0 km/h).

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine does not go into standby in the following cases.

- Steep slope (rising or falling).
- Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "START/STOP" button).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

i After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

i During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

- ☞ **With a manual gearbox:** with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox:**
 - With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
 - With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
 - With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
 - Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine restarts automatically in the following cases.

- With a manual gearbox: vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h),
- With an automatic gearbox:
 - With the gear selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).
 - Adaptive Cruise Control function deactivated.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

- ☞ Have the vehicle checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if this fault occurs.

- !** The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which**

must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding,
- lengthens braking distances,
- causes premature wear of the tyres,
- increases fuel consumption.

i The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Checking tyre pressures**

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert



This is signalled by continuous illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

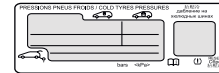
- ☞ Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.

- ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



! Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.

Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.

The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ In this menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab.
- ☞ In the page, select the "**Under-inflation initialisation**" function.
- ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction



The illumination of these warning lamps indicates a fault with the system.

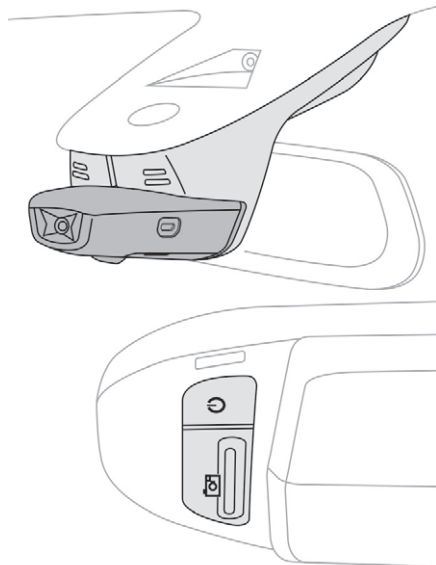
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN ConnectedCAM®

(Depending on country of sale.)



This camera, installed at the top of the windshield and connected wirelessly, allows you to:

- take photos and videos on demand and share them,
- send the vehicle's GPS coordinates to a smartphone,
- record videos automatically in the event of a vehicle impact.

! Without exception, any action which the driver takes concerning the camera must be **with the vehicle stopped**.

Operation

To use all camera functions, you must perform the following operations:

- ☞ download the "**CITROËN ConnectedCAM®**" application onto a smartphone,
- ☞ pair the smartphone with the camera following the instructions given by the application.

Pairing is necessary at the first connection. After this it will be automatic.

The default pairing code is: ConnectedCAM.

Switching on



- ☞ Press and hold this button to switch the camera on. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

When the camera is switched on, video recording is automatic and permanent.

Switching off



- ☞ Press and hold this button to switch the camera off. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

If you switch the camera off manually, it will remain off even after the vehicle is restarted and will have to be switched on manually.

Managing photos and videos



- ☞ Press this button briefly to take a photo.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.



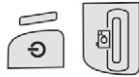
- ☞ Press and hold this button to record a video.

A micro USB port also allows the data from the camera to be saved onto other media such as computers, tablets, etc.

Thanks to the "**CITROËN ConnectedCAM**" application, you can then automatically and immediately share your photos and videos on social networks or by email.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.

Resetting the system



Pressing and holding these two buttons simultaneously resets the system. This action erases all data recorded in the camera and reinitialises the camera's default pairing code.

! For safety reasons, the driver must not use the CITROËN ConnectedCAM® application from a smartphone while driving. He or she must perform any action requiring sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary.

Operating fault



When a system fault occurs, the indicator lamp in the button flashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids – General recommendations

i Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climactic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane.

The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

i Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep your feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.

i Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

! Radar

The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged.

If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.



! Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: "**Driving aids camera:**

Visibility limited, see user guide".

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

i Other cameras

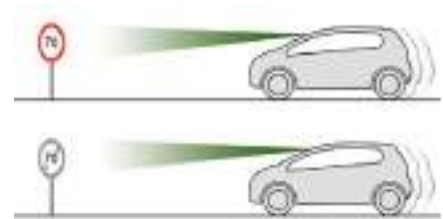
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

- Signs detected by the camera indicating the area of a junction:

! Sensors



The operation of the sensors as well as the associated functions may be disturbed by sound interference such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.

The sensors do not detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).

Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

i Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly. When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.


! Mats

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:




- ☞ ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- ☞ never fit one mat on top of another.




i Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally. In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a junction area Example: 	Without CITROËN Connect Nav 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) With CITROËN Connect Nav Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.

- Certain qualifier plates detected by the camera:

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit in rain Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit if towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)

<p>Speed limit for vehicles whose gross vehicle weight or gross train weight is less than 3.5 tonnes</p> 	<p>56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)</p>
<p>Speed limit in snow Example:</p> 	<p>If the exterior temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol</p>
<p>Speed limit at certain times Example:</p> 	<p>19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol</p>

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit. For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority in comparison with the display by the system. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication.
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle's speed exceeds it by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (example: 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed flashes for 10 seconds.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- obstructed road signs (by other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

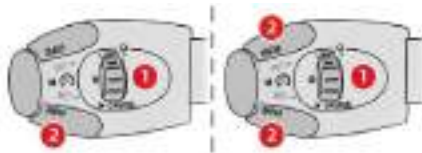
Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control storage button.

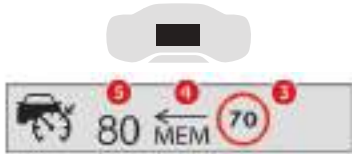
i For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

☞ Press button **2** **once** to save the suggested speed value. A message is displayed to confirm the request.

☞ Press button **2** **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting. After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition



This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them in the instrument panel if the appropriate display mode is selected.

One-way street: if you start driving the wrong way down a one-way street, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).

Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The real road signs always take priority over the display from the system. The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Programmable speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

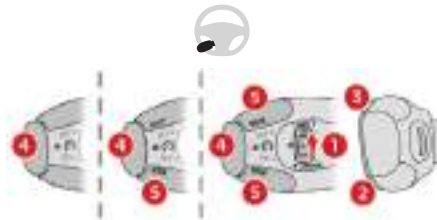


This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (**0** position).
2. Reduce the speed setting.
3. Increase the speed setting.

4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored.
5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds.
or
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Indication of speed limiter on (amber colour)/pause (grey colour).
7. Indication of speed limiter mode selection.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **LIMIT** position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.
- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the speed limiter setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ To temporarily exceed the programmed speed threshold, fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. If it is exceeded for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is triggered.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "0" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the speed limiter.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- !** On sharp acceleration, as when descending a steep hill, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver.
- The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
- To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
 - never fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control – particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur.

When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i Exceeding the programmed speed setting

The speed setting can be exceeded **temporarily** by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes). To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when this speed is reached again, the display of the speed stops flashing).

! Operating limits

Never use the system in the following situations:

- in an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road,
- in heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function),
- on winding or steep roads,
- on slippery or flooded roads,
- in unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Programmable cruise control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control – particular recommendations**.



This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

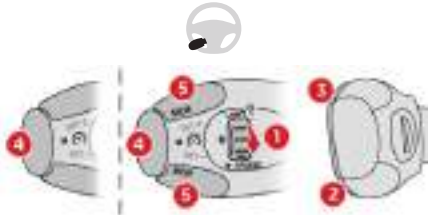
With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher.

With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

i The cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type on engines fitted with Stop & Start.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (**0** position).
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting.
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting.
4. Pausing/resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored.
5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds.
or
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Indication of speed limiter on (amber colour)/pause (grey colour).
7. Indication of cruise control mode selection.
8. Value of the speed setting.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.

- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**; the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.
You can release the accelerator pedal.
- ☞ Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts operation of the system (pause).
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Memorising speeds

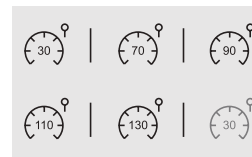
Linked to the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, this function allows speed limits to be registered which will then be suggested as settings for these two systems.

You can memorise several speed settings for each for system.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

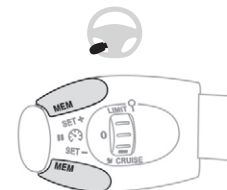
! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

Memorising speeds



From the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select "**Driving functions**", then "**Memorised speed settings**".

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the associated section.

Highway Driver Assist

This system provides active assistance in keeping the vehicle in position in its lane. It associates the Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop & Go function and Active Lane Keeping Assist.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on **Adaptive Cruise Control** and **Active Lane Keeping Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! The system assists the driver in managing the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle. Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control – particular recommendations**.

This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.

With the **Stop function**, the system manages the braking until the vehicle stops completely. With the **Stop & Go function**, the system manages the braking until the vehicle stops completely, and also manages its restarting.



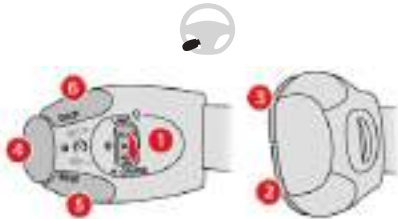
To do so, it has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

Steering mounted control



- 1 ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (**0** position).
- 2 Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting.
- 3 Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting.
- 4 Pausing/resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored. Confirmation of the restarting of the vehicle after automatic stop (versions with Stop & Go function).

- 5 Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).
- 6 Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front.

Use

Activate the system (when paused)

- ☞ With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

Start cruise control and select a speed

With a manual gearbox, your speed must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h).

With an automatic EAT6 gearbox, your speed must be between 1.2 and 112 mph (2 and 180 km/h).

With an automatic EAT8 gearbox, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).

- ☞ Press button **2** or **3**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately in operation (green displayed).
- ☞ Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Pause/resume cruise control

- ☞ Press **4** or press the **brake pedal**. To pause cruise control, you may also:
 - shift from mode **D** to **N**,
 - press the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds,
 - press the electric parking brake control.
 - ☞ Press **4** to restart cruise control. Cruise control may have been paused automatically:
 - when the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox,
 - when the speed of the engine goes below 1,100 rpm with a manual gearbox,
 - by triggering of the ESC system.
- With an EAT6 gearbox, following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused. The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then above 1.2 mph (2 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With an EAT8 gearbox, following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to be restarted within the 3 seconds following immobilisation, press button 4 or the accelerator pedal to start off again. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

! When the cruise control is paused, the message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed as long as reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Using the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation function

☞ Press 5 to accept the speed suggested by the function, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

☞ Press 6 to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal", "Close"), then press again to select an option.

After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

☞ Press the accelerator pedal. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated as long as you continue to accelerate. "Cruise control suspended" is displayed.

Deactivating the system

☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 upwards to the OFF position.

Displays in the instrument panel

The following information can be seen in the instrument panel in "DRIVING" display mode.



7. Vehicle detected by the system (symbol full).
8. Cruise control active (colour not grey).
9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
11. Vehicle held stopped (versions with automatic gearbox).





12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of vehicle detected by the system.


Messages and alerts


The "Driving" display mode of the digital instrument panel must have been selected first.


i The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.

 "Cruise control paused" or "Cruise control suspended" following a brief acceleration by the driver.


 "Cruise control active", no vehicle detected.


 "Cruise control paused", vehicle detected.

 "Cruise control active", vehicle detected.


 "Take back control of the vehicle" (orange)



 Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

 "Take back control of the vehicle" (red)



 **Take immediate control of the vehicle:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable". The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).

Stop function



"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds).



The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised: the cruise control pauses. The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Stop & Go function



"To move off again: accelerate or press button 4"



The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop. Within 3 seconds, the vehicle starts off again automatically and gradually. After 3 seconds, the driver must accelerate or press button 4 to move off again.

! During the vehicle immobilisation phase, it is recommended:

- Not to open the doors.
- Not to drop off or pick up passengers.
- Not to engage reverse gear.

! When the vehicle restarts, watch out for cyclists, pedestrians or animals which may not be detected properly.

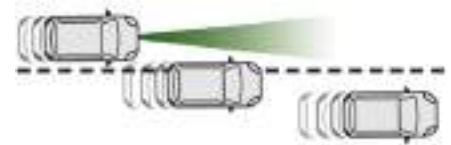
Operating limits

The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

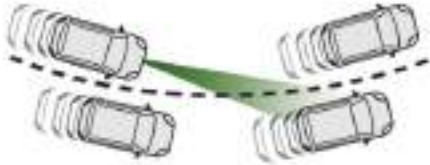
Cases of non-detection by the system:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).



- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



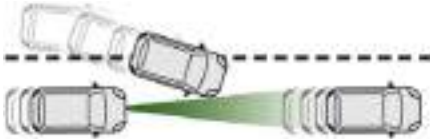
- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.
- Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

! Pay particular attention:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

! If one of these malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:

- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
- Brake lamps not working.

! If the vehicle has been subject to one of the following modifications, do not use the system:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Towing.
- Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).
- Front end of the vehicle modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper).

Malfunction



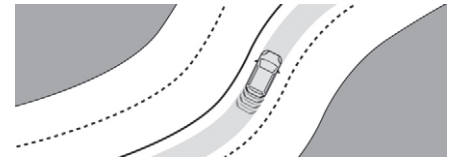
If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms a malfunction.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Lane Keeping Assist



Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen, the system identifies lane markings and steers the vehicle inside this lane to keep it in the lateral position chosen by the driver.

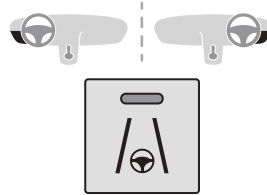
This function is primarily suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

Conditions for operation

- The adaptive cruise control must be active.
- The vehicle must be travelling in a traffic lane clearly delimited by lines on both sides.
- The ESC system must be operating.
- The ASR/DSC systems must not be deactivated.
- No trailer detected.
- A spare wheel of the "space-saver" type must not be in use.
- The vehicle must not be subject to strong lateral accelerations.
- The direction indicators must not be activated.

Activation/Deactivation

i The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



- ☞ With the adaptive cruise control activated, press this button.
- The action is confirmed by:
- Illumination of the indicator lamp in the button in green.
 - Display of the following symbol in the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbol depends on the operating state of the system:



(grey colour)

At least one of the operating conditions is not met, the system is paused.



(green colour)

All operating conditions are met, the system is active.



(orange colour)

The system has a fault.

If the driver no longer wishes to benefit from the system for a while, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off and the symbol disappears from the instrument panel.

Cruise control

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly.

When cruise control is activated, the symbol is displayed in green: by small steering actions, the system directs the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver, in the traffic lane.

The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.

This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.

The driver can change the position of the vehicle at any time, by turning the steering wheel. When the driver feels that the vehicle's position is appropriate, whilst keeping hands on the steering wheel, they must release the pressure to let the system resume control of the steering, but the vehicle is not centred within the lane automatically.

Pausing/Suspension of the system

! The driver must intervene as soon as they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface make this necessary, by moving the steering wheel to suspend the system temporarily. Any action at the brake pedal which results in the cruise control being paused will also cause the system to be paused.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no reaction from the driver.

i After suspension due to the prolonged release of the force holding the steering wheel, you must reactivate the function by pressing the button again.

Automatic pausing:









- Triggering of the ESC.
- Prolonged failure to detect one of the lane limit markings. In this case, the active lane departure warning function can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are again met.










On action by the driver: suspension

- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (pausing until the cruise control is reactivated) or accelerator pedal (suspension for as long as the pedal is pressed).
- Pausing the cruise control.
- Deactivation of the DSC/ASR systems.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations. The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Indicator lamp in the button	Symbol	Cruise control wheel	Display	Associated message	Comments
Off	-	"OFF"	-	-	None of the functions are activated.
Off	-	"CRUISE"	 (grey colour)	"Cruise control paused"	The Active Lane Keeping Assist function is not activated, the cruise control is paused.
Off	-	"CRUISE"	 (green colour)	"Cruise control on"	The Active Lane Keeping Assist function is not activated, the cruise control is active.
Green	 (green colour)	"CRUISE"	 70 or  70 (green colour)	"Cruise control and Lane Keeping Assist function active"	The Highway Driver Assist operates normally.
Green	 (grey colour)	"CRUISE"	 70 or  70 (grey colour)	"Cruise control and Lane Keeping Assist function paused"	The system has been paused automatically or by driver action.

Indicator lamp in the button	Symbol	Cruise control wheel	Display	Associated message	Comments
Green	 (grey colour)	"OFF"	-	"Activate the cruise control to use the Lane Keeping Assist function"	All operating conditions are met except activation of the adaptive cruise control.
Green	 (grey colour)	"CRUISE"	 70 or  70 (green colour)	"Unsuitable conditions – Activation on stand-by"	All conditions required for lateral control have not been met.
Off	-	"CRUISE"	 70 or  70 (green colour)	"Hold the wheel"	The driver is not holding the steering wheel correctly and has not taken notice of the warnings (messages and audible alarm): the Active Lane Keeping Assist function is switched off.
Green	 (grey colour)	"CRUISE"	 70 or  70 (grey colour)	"Retake control"	The cruise control can no longer ensure lateral and longitudinal control: the driver must retake control of the vehicle (acceleration or braking). The alert is accompanied by an audible signal.

Operating limits

- The Active Lane Keeping Assist system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

The system may fail to operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:

- Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
- Windscreen area in front of the camera being dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker.
- Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
- Travelling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.
- Presence of a tarmac joint on the road.

! The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When towing, especially with an unconnected or unapproved trailer.
- Poor weather conditions.
- Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Recommendations on care

- Regularly check that the front bumper and the area of the windscreen located in front of the camera are clean.
- Regularly check that the windscreen wipers are in good condition.
- In bad weather, or during the winter, ensure that the front bumper and windscreen are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Malfunctions



A system malfunction is indicated by the Service warning lamp coming on and this (orange) symbol, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal.

(orange colour)

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system allows:

- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front, a pedestrian or, depending on version, a cyclist,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

i The system also takes motorcyclists and animals into account; however, animals below 0.5 m tall and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system is comprised of three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert,
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunctional camera located at the top of the windscreen, and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



This system can be deactivated or activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
The DSC/ASR systems must not be deactivated.

All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- damaged front bumper (version with radar),
- following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated after the use of certain "space-saver" type spare wheels is detected (smaller diameter).

The system is automatically deactivated after detection of a fault with the brake pedal switch or with at least two brake lamps.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Collision Risk Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian or cyclist present in your traffic lane.



The current threshold can be modified via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- "Distant",
- "Normal",
- "Close".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.

The "**Vehicle close**" message is displayed.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

Level 3: finally, in some cases, a haptic alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.

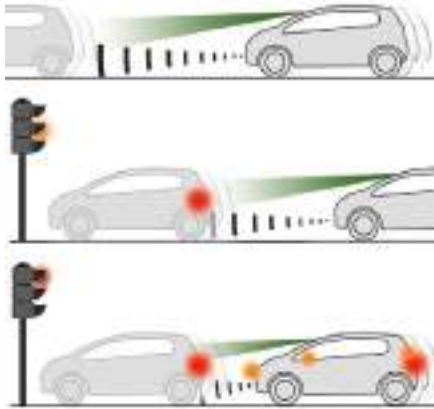
i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high when approaching another vehicle, the level 2 alert may be displayed immediately.

Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes. It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle or a cyclist is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) or between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) when a moving vehicle is detected.



If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist, this warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) when the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.



The driver can control the vehicle at any time by making a deliberate movement of the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.



Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the continuous illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

6

Fatigue detection system

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

The function comprises the "Coffee Break Alert" system combined with the "Driver Attention Alert" system.

Activation/Deactivation



These functions are activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Coffee Break Alert



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal. If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

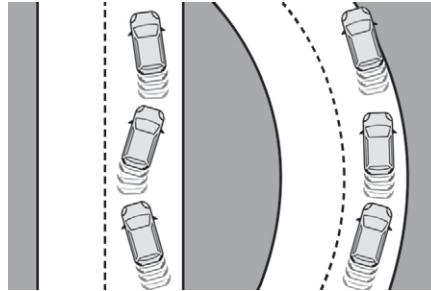
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.

The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Alert



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to main roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Driving at risk: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

i In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the road, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the road and at the edges of the road (depending on version), the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version). This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).

The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.

The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.

The ESC system must not be faulty.
The ASR/DSC systems must be activated.

! The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.

Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected, it makes the correction to the trajectory required to return the vehicle to its initial path.

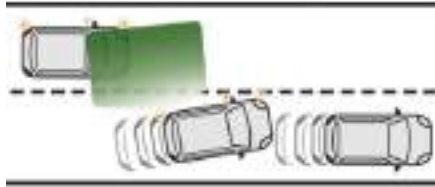
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example). The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.







However, with the Blind Spot Monitoring system activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.






For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring system**, refer to the corresponding section.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situations.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ASR/DSC systems deactivated or regulation by ESC system in progress, - "sporty" driving.
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		 (orange)/(green) "Take back control of the vehicle."	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ASR/DSC systems deactivated or regulation by ESC system in progress,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of a "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding,
- insufficient contrast (shade, for example) between the road and the edges of the road.

Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:

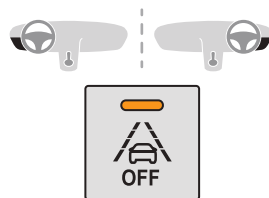
- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:

- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling stand,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Deactivation/Activation

The system is **activated** every time the ignition is switched on.



☞ To deactivate the system, press this button.



Deactivation is signalled by the **lighting of the indicator lamp** in the button and this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

Reactivation is by another press, the indicator lamp in the button and the warning lamp switch off.

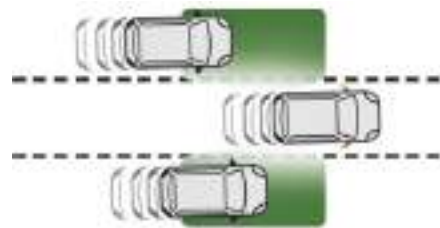
Malfunction



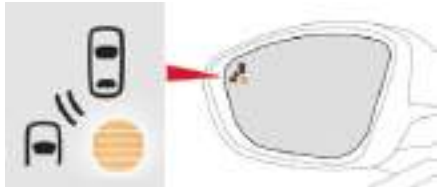
In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spots of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A fixed warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicator activated, to help you avoid a collision.

! This driving aid system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before deciding whether to change lane.

Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

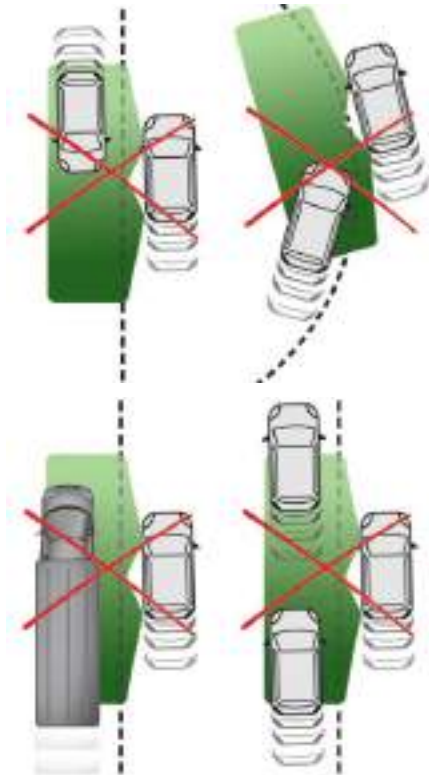
Operation

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by an orange warning lamp coming on in the relevant door mirror, as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected. A correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicator flashing.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h) for the alert and between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h) for a correction of trajectory,
- the system must be activated to trigger a change of trajectory,
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given and no correction will be made in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- if the Park Assist function is activated.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

- ! The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

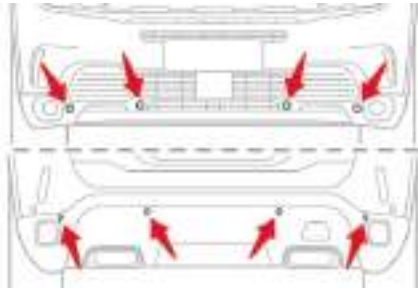
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

- ! The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

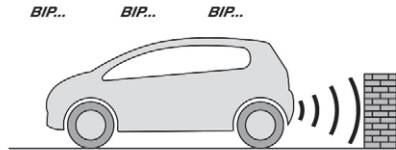
Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The function signals the presence of obstacles present within the vehicle sensors' detection zone.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows you to identify the side on which the obstacle is located.

i Adjusting the audible signal



On versions equipped with CITROËN Connect Radio, pressing this button opens the audible signal volume adjustment window.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles; orange: close obstacles; red: very close obstacles).

When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation



The function is deactivated and activated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space. For more information on the **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.

Malfunction



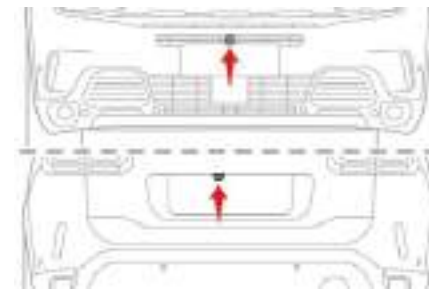
If a malfunction occurs, when shifting to reverse, one of these warning lamps comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).

If the malfunction occurs while the parking sensors are being used, it causes the function to deactivate.

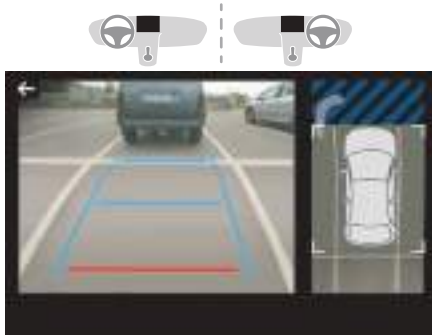
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Top Rear Vision – Top 360 Vision

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



With the engine running, these systems allow views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using one camera for Top Rear Vision and two cameras for Top 360 Vision.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

- ☞ Press the button in the bottom left-hand corner of the touch screen.
- ☞ Select the type of view:
 - "Standard view".
 - "180° view",
 - "Zoom view",
 - "AUTO view".

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



Using one or two cameras, the close surroundings of the vehicle are recorded whilst manoeuvring at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the blue brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.

This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.

This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

With Top 360 Vision, the image is created using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.

When the function is activated, it is possible that the view from above is not displayed. If the system is activated when the vehicle has already moved, the view from above can be fully displayed.

Top Rear Vision

Rear vision



To activate the camera, located near the number plate lamps, engage reverse and keep the speed of the vehicle below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- automatically on opening the tailgate,

- when shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the white arrow in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Standard view



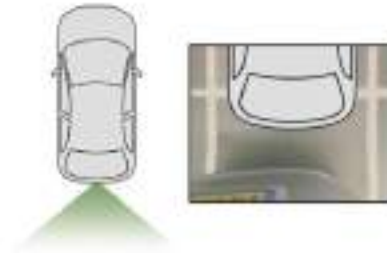
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

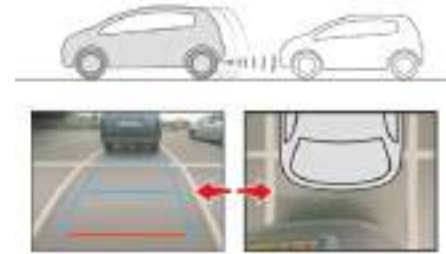
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors. The rear parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default. Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view (standard) to a view from above (zoom), as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Top 360 Vision

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the number plate lamps.

Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings on the touch screen, offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision), when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision), when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

Rear vision



The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),

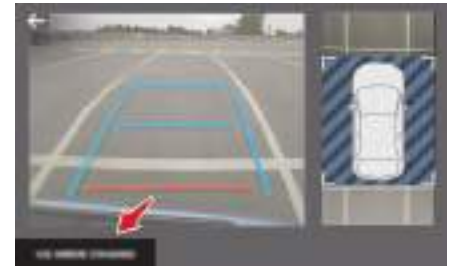
- when shifting out of reverse (the rear view image is replaced by the front view image after 7 seconds),
- by pressing the white arrow in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

i If a trailer or a bicycle carrier is fitted to the towball, the area behind the vehicle on the view from above goes dark. The surroundings are reconstructed by the front camera only.

The rear vision views are similar to those for the Top Rear Vision.

For more information on the **Top Rear Vision**, refer to the corresponding section.

Front and rear vision





With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen:

☞ Select "**Panoramic visual aid**".

AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 19 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)),
- by pressing the white arrow in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Standard view



The area in front of your vehicle is displayed in the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.

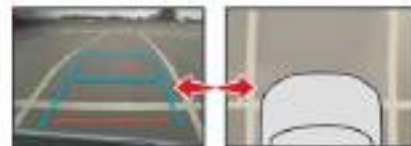
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

The front and rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default. Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from the front view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

180° view



The 180° view assists with exiting from a parking bay in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.

This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active assistance with parking: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space.

With **manual and automatic gearboxes**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and forward and reverse gear engagement.

During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. Several forward and reverse manoeuvres may be required.

At any time, the driver can take back control by holding the steering wheel.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- A.** Entry into a parallel parking space.
- B.** Exit from a parallel parking space.
- C.** Entry into a bay parking space.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) – risk of injury!

! In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

i The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.

i When Park Assist is activated, it prevents entry into STOP mode of Stop & Start. In STOP mode, activation of Park Assist restarts the engine.

i The Park Assist system takes control of the power steering for a maximum of 4 manoeuvring cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take over the steering to finish the manoeuvre.

! The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed on the touch screen.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take over the steering.

! You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

i The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away. If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

! Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Monitoring system.

i During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the Top Rear Vision – Top 360 Vision functions may come into operation. They allow better monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the touch screen. For more information on the **Top Rear Vision – Top 360 Vision** functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

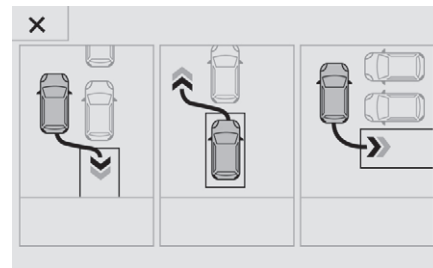
Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres



☞ When you wish to park, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.

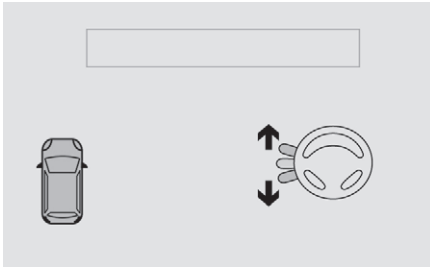


With a digital instrument panel, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.



☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parallel parking space**" on the screen.

i To enter a parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



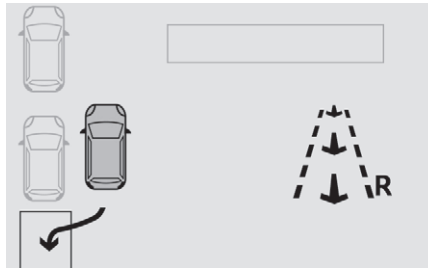
- ☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



- ☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



- ☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- ☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



- ☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



- ☞ At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control again.

Assistance in exiting from a parallel parking space

- ☞ When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.

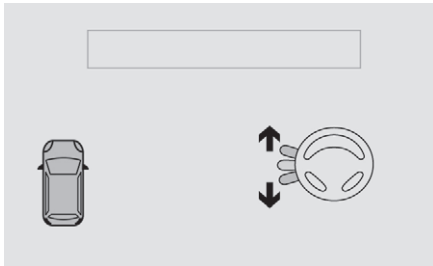


- ☞ With the vehicle stationary, select **"Park Assist"** in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.



With a digital instrument panel, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.

- ☞ Press **"Exit parking space"** on the screen.



- ☞ Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.
- ☞ Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



- ☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space. At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp

in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control again.

Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres

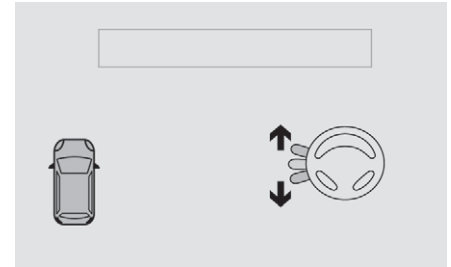


- ☞ When you wish to park, select **"Park Assist"** in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.



With a digital instrument panel, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.

- ☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter bay parking space"** on the screen.



- ☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



- ☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

i When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



- ☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- ☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



- ☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.

At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control again.

i During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.

The system is deactivated automatically:

- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off and a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

The driver should then take back the vehicle's steering.

i If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

Deactivation

The system is switched off automatically:

- when towing a trailer, connected electrically,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunctions



When the function is not activated, this warning lamp temporarily flashing (vehicle with digital instrument panel) and/or an audible signal indicate a system malfunction.

If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN prefers **TOTAL**



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS



For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.

Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: Approximately 53 litres.

Low fuel level



When the level in the tank becomes low, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, there remains **about 6 litres** of fuel in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp reappears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**. You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

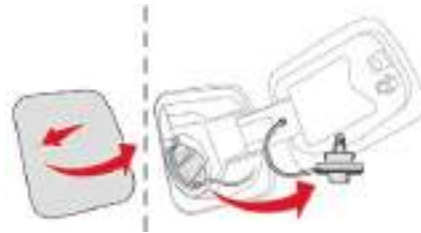
Refuelling

Fuel top-ups must be of at least 5 litres in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is

entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

To refuel in complete safety:

☞ **You must switch off the engine.**



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear-central part of the filler flap to open it.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
- ☞ Turn the filler cap to the left.
- ☞ Remove the filler cap and hang it on its carrier (on the filler flap).
- ☞ Introduce the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Fill the tank. **Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.**
- ☞ Refit the filler cap.
- ☞ Turn it to the right.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

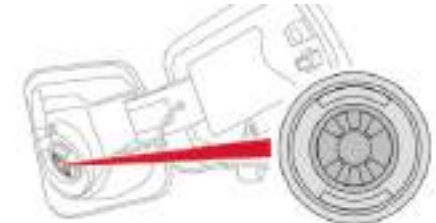
! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with a CITROËN dealer whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Compatibility of fuels



Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.



Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards respectively and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".



Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50% full.

At temperatures below -15°C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Towing device

Load distribution

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by CITROËN. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towing device is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Important: for versions equipped with the motorised tailgate with Hands-Free Tailgate Access function, if a towing device other than a genuine CITROËN one is installed, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the detection system: risk of "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function failure.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing system is used.

! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

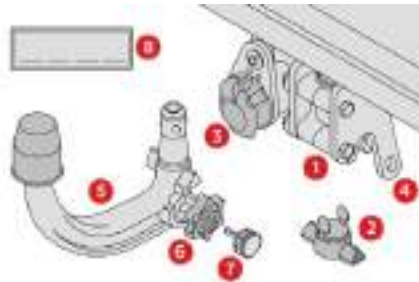
! **Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function**

To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:

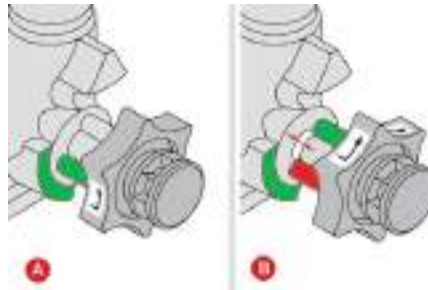
- deactivate the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu,
- or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

Towing device with quickly detachable towball

Presentation



1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Connection socket.
4. Safety eye.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Key reference label.



- A. **Locked** position (the **green** marks are opposite each other); the wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).
- B. **Unlocked** position (red mark opposite the **green** mark); the wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

! Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

i To know the **Technical data**, and in particular the towable weights for your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section. To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted, verifying the follow points:

- the green mark on the wheel is in line with the green mark on the towball,
- the wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**),
- the security key lock is closed and the key removed; the wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach – accident risk!

! During use

Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball. Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle – the Gross Train Weight or GTW.

It is essential that the maximum authorised load be complied with on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may detach from the vehicle, which is a serious accident risk.

Check that the trailer lamps work correctly.

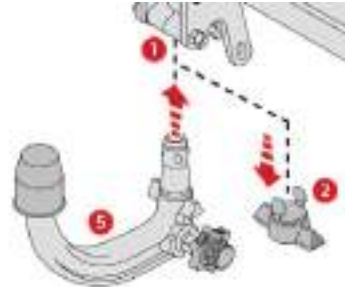
Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.

For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

! After use

When travelling without a trailer or load carrier, the towball must be removed and the protective plug inserted in the carrier for good visibility of the number plate and its lighting.

Fitting the towball

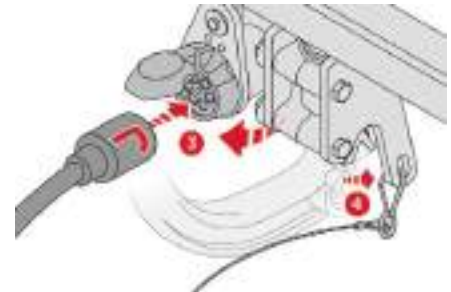
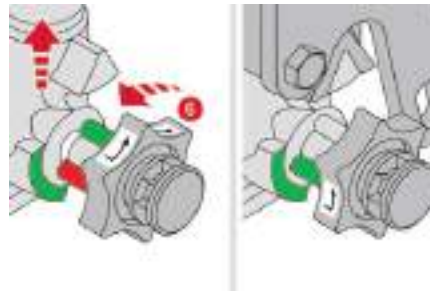


- ☞ Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug 2 from the carrier 1.
- ☞ Insert the end of the towball 5 into the carrier 1 and push it upwards; the locking will take place automatically.

- ☞ The wheel 6 turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!



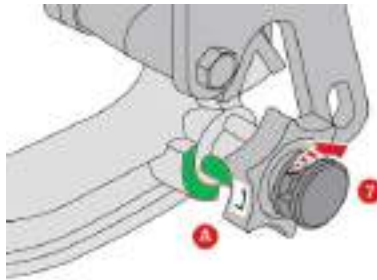
- ☞ Check that the mechanism has correctly locked into place (position A).
- ☞ Close the lock 7 using the key.
- ☞ Always remove the key. The key cannot be removed when the lock is open.
- ☞ Clip the cap onto the lock.



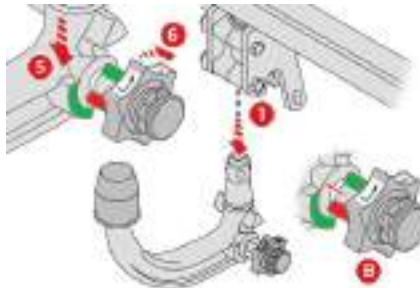
- ☞ Remove the protective cover from the towball.
- ☞ Attach the trailer to the towball.
- ☞ Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- ☞ Lower the connection socket **3** to put it in position.
- ☞ Insert the trailer plug and give it a quarter turn to connect it to the connection socket **3** of the carrier.

Removing the towball

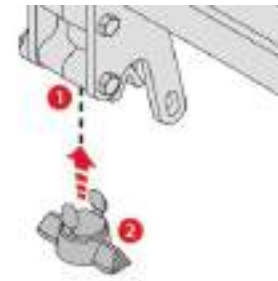
- ☞ Give a quarter turn to and pull the trailer plug to disconnect it from the connection socket **3** of the carrier.
- ☞ Raise the connection socket **3** to the right again to stow it away.
- ☞ Detach the cable on the trailer from the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- ☞ Detach the trailer from the towball.
- ☞ Refit the protective cover to the towball.
- ☞ Remove the cap from the lock and press it onto the head of the key.



- ☞ Insert the key into the lock **7**.
- ☞ Open the lock using the key.



- ☞ Hold the towball **5** firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn the wheel **6** fully in a clockwise direction; do not release the wheel.
- ☞ Extract the towball from the bottom of its carrier **1**.
- ☞ Release the wheel; this automatically stops in the unlocked position (position **B**).



- ☞ Refit the protective plug **2** to the carrier **1**.
- ☞ Carefully stow the towball in its bag away from knocks and dirt.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean. Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

- i** Apply the label provided to a clearly visible area, close to the carrier or in the boot. Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, the dipped beam headlamps, the courtesy lamps, etc.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used. In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes,

- for more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes. Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient. Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/65 R17	9 mm
235/55 R18	cannot be fitted with chains
205/55 R19	9 mm

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fitting roof bars

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

! **Sunroof**
Check that the load does not pass below the roof bars so that it does not impede the movements of the sunroof.

! **Recommendations**

- ☞ Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Secure the load firmly and fit a warning flag if the load overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds (stability may be affected).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

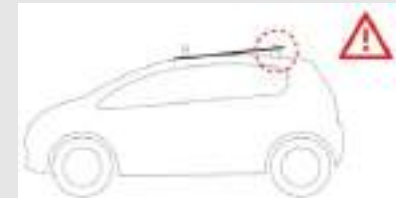
! Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **75 kg**.

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted on the guide supplied with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

! **Sunroof**

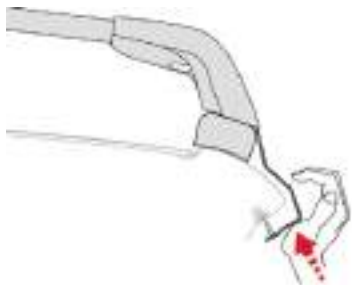


Do not operate the sunroof when using roof bars – risk of major damage!

Version without longitudinal bars

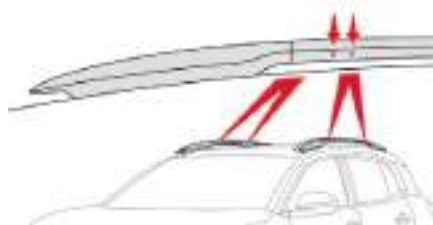


To install the roof bars, you must secure them only to the four fixing points on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle's doors when they are closed.



The roof bar fixings include a lug to be fitted into the hole at each fixing point.

Version with longitudinal bars



You must fit the transverse bars to the longitudinal bars at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

Bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

- i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area. When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch. Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

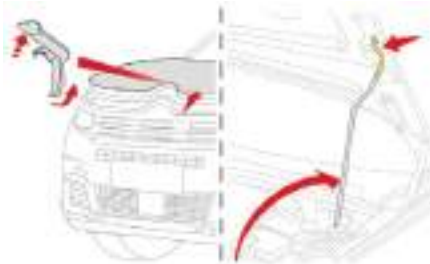
! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Opening

- ☞** Open the left-hand front door.



- ☞** Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- ☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.
- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

These engines are examples provided as a guide.

The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.
- Degassing screw.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery/Fuses.

5. Remote earth point (-).
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Priming pump*
11. Degassing screw*.

* Depending on engine.

! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure. All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health, and may be very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



The level is checked either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on, for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

The vehicle must be parked on a level surface, with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

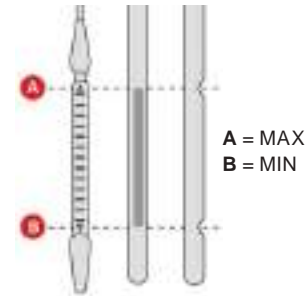
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Check using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



Do not start the engine if the level is:

- Above mark **A**, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- Below mark **B**, then top up the engine oil immediately.

i Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i During the 30 minutes after topping up the oil, the check performed with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the "MAX" mark. If not, check the brake pad wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! If topping up, clean the cap before replacing it. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed canister.

Engine coolant



Check the engine coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.

The level of this fluid should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

! Cooling of the engine when stopped

The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off. Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Screenwash fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid containing an anti-freeze agent must be used which is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

! Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, jets, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)



or



The minimum level in the particle filter additive tank is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message warning that the level of additive is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **AdBlue range indicators**, refer to the corresponding section. To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on the **Supply of AdBlue**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cabin filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often if necessary**.

i A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often if necessary**.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



or



The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

i If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

i **New vehicle**
The first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

i After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in case of an issue, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

! Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Advice on care and maintenance

Recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

Headlamps and lamps

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating. Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.

Use a sponge and soapy water.

The use of a high pressure jet wash for cleaning the headlamps, lamps and their surrounds may damage the lacquer and seals.

Observe the recommendations on pressure and distance for jet washing.

First clean persistent stains with a sponge and warm soapy water.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care and cleaning is essential for its durability.

i Refer to your vehicle's Maintenance and Warranty guide for information on all the special precautions to observe.

AdBlue® (BlueHDI)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 5,600 miles (9,000 km), **highly dependent** on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling a distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

i Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

- !** In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
 - Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
 - Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes below about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

! Never keep bottles or containers of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (at high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

- ! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

Do not pour AdBlue® if the temperature of the vehicle is less than -11°C. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

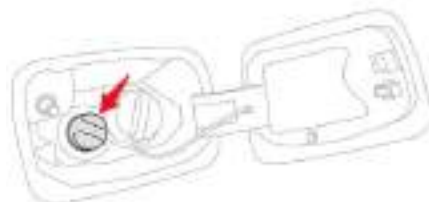
- ! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

- ! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

- ! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

Access to the AdBlue® tank

A blue cap under the fuel filler flap indicates access to the AdBlue® tank.



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
- Or
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.
 - ☞ Turn the AdBlue® blue filler cap anti-clockwise.
 - ☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container (check the use-by date) and pour the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
- Or
- ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

- ! Important:
To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
 - ☞ To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
- Or
- ☞ When filling at a service station, to stop after the third automatic cut-off of the nozzle.

- ! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue**, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment.**
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

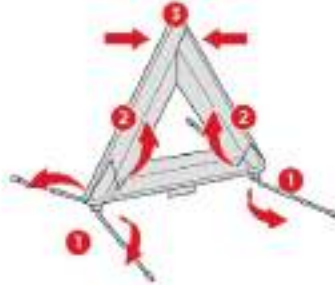
Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a triangle.

- ☞ Open the tailgate.
- ☞ Release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above. For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

- ☞ Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

BlueHDi 130 engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
 - ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
 - ☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
 - ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine.
- If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

BlueHDi 180 engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the last two operations 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine.

HDi engines

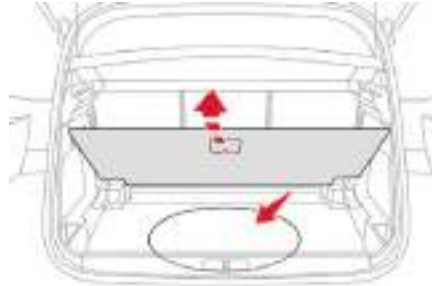
- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
- ☞ Loosen the degassing bolt.
- ☞ Operate the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
- ☞ Retighten the degassing bolt.
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Put the cover back in place, clip it and ensure it is clipped in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with the vehicle. Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- temporary puncture repair kit,
- spare wheel.

Access to the tool kit

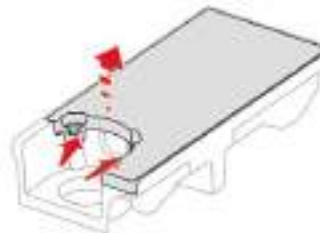


The main tools are stowed in the boot, under the floor.

For access to them:

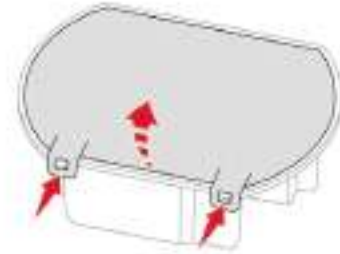
- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Place the adjustable boot floor in the high position.

Versions with a temporary puncture repair kit



- ☞ Unclip the two fixings to open its cover.

Versions with a spare wheel



- ☞ unclip the storage box by pulling it up,
- ☞ unclip the two fixings to open its cover.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle. If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it. The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE. The jack does not require any maintenance.

List of tools



1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment). For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
3. Towing eye and tool to open the protective covers of the front and rear screw threads.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

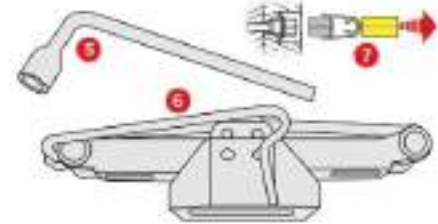
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with a cartridge of sealant and a speed limit sticker. For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For further information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace. For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel fixing bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle. Used to raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover remover (depending on equipment). For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

In the event of a breakdown

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

! Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw, etc.) which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

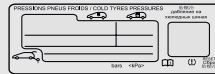
Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

I You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

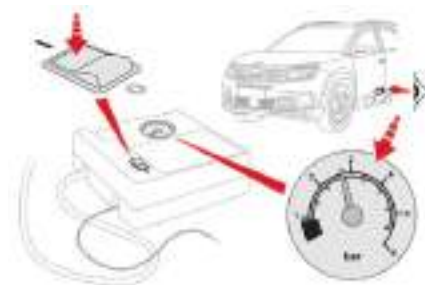
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to one of the vehicle's 12 V sockets.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure

label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "O".
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a repaired tyre; see a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

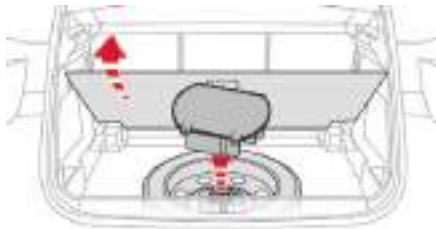
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the spare wheel

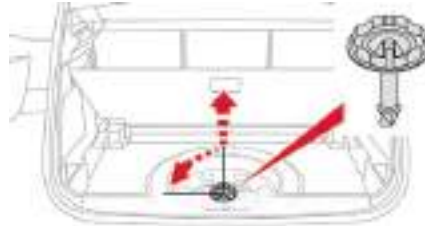


The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

For access to the spare wheel, first refer to section on the **Tool kit**.

i Depending on version, the spare wheel is a standard size steel or alloy wheel. For some countries of sale, it is the "space saver" type.

Taking out the wheel



- ☞ Slacken the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in place in its housing.
- ☞ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.



- ☞ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten the central nut to retain the wheel correctly.
- ☞ Store the tool box in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

i If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

Removing a wheel

i **Wheel with wheel trim**
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

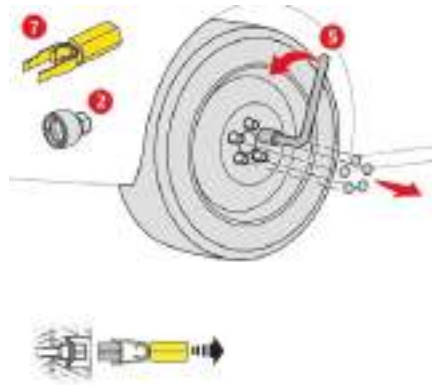
Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and with a manual gearbox, engage first gear so as to lock the wheels.

Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and with an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** so as to lock the wheels.

Check that the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel are on fixed. The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

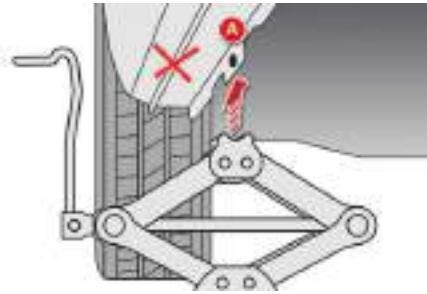
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



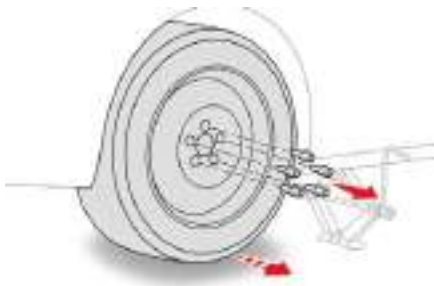
- ☞ To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- ☞ Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

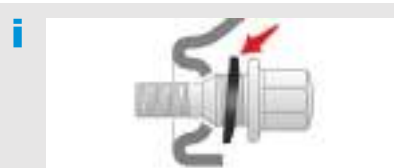


- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

- ☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop – risk of injury!
Position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points, **A** or **B**, under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack collapsing – risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

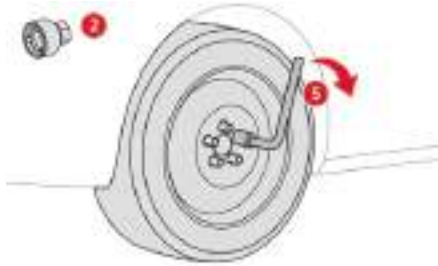
If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on refitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with security socket **2**.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack **6** and detach it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with security socket **2**.
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools.

After changing a wheel

Store the punctured wheel in the boot or, depending on version, remove the central cover first to store it beneath the floor in place of the spare wheel.

! With a 'space-saver' type spare wheel



The following is recommended:

- deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.), as indicated on the label attached to the wheel,
- do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

! Driving with more than one 'space-saver' type spare wheel is prohibited.

! Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- ! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!
- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

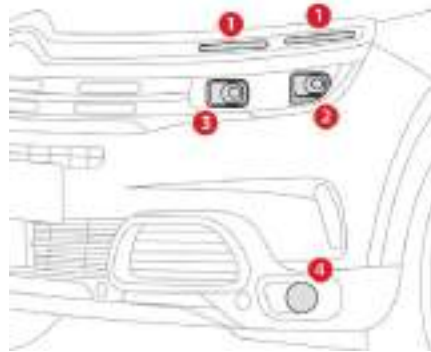
i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! **Light-emitting diodes (LED)**
For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i **Halogen bulbs**
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

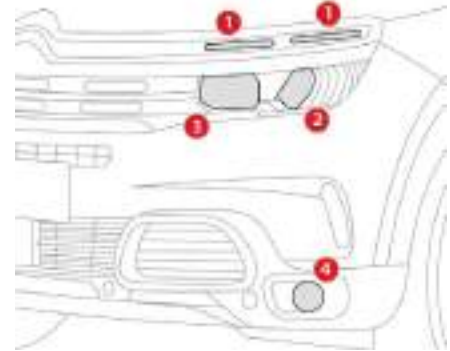
Front lamps

Model A



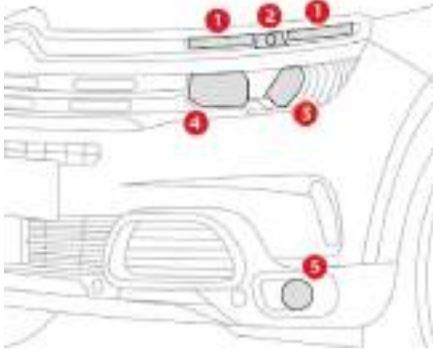
1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps/direction indicators (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (LED).
3. Dipped beam/main beam headlamps (LED).
4. Front foglamps (P21W).

Model B



1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps/direction indicators (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).
3. Main beam headlamps (HB3-65W).
4. Front foglamps (P21W).

Model C



1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED).
2. Direction indicators (WY21W).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).
4. Main beam headlamps (HB3-65W).
5. Front foglamps (P21W).

! Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs

With the engine warm, proceed with caution – Risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine fan – Risk of strangulation!

Direction indicators (halogen headlamps)

i Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

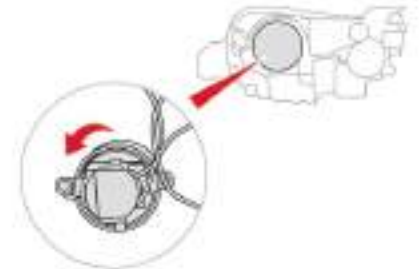


- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Pull the bulb and bulb holder assembly rearwards.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.

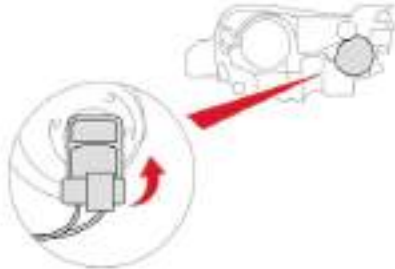
Main beam headlamps (halogen headlamps)



- ☞ Remove the protective cover.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order. When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamp.

Dipped beam headlamps (halogen headlamps)



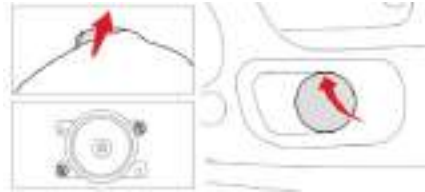
- ☞ Remove the protective cover.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Turn the lamp a quarter turn anti-clockwise and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order. When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamp.

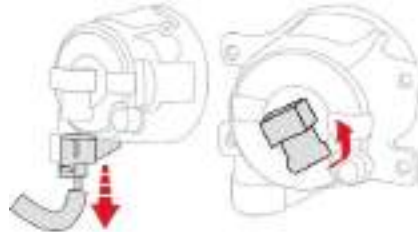
Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of diode bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing foglamp bulbs



- ☞ Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the trim.
- ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the foglamp trim.
- ☞ With a Torx screwdriver, remove the two module fixing screws.
- ☞ Remove the module from its housing.



- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the assembly.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Direction indicator side repeaters (LED)

For the replacement of this type of diode bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Door mirror spotlamps (LED)

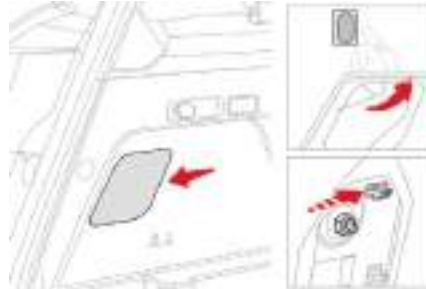
For the replacement of this type of diode bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



1. Brake lamps (LED).
2. Sidelamps (LED).
3. Direction indicators (WY21W).
4. Reversing lamps (W16W).
5. Foglamps (P21W).

Direction indicators (on the wings)



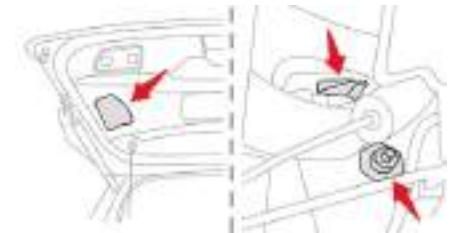
- ☞ Open the tailgate, then unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ☞ Unblock the lamp fixing nut with a 10 mm box spanner.
- ☞ To avoid losing the nut in the wing trim if it drops, first place a cloth below it.
- ☞ Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining clip, while pushing the lamp out slightly.



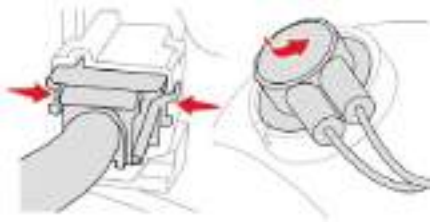
- ☞ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear, then up.
- ☞ Disengage the cable duct from the panel.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn using a universal pair of pliers if necessary and pull it out.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Reversing lamps (on the tailgate)



- ☞ Open the tailgate, then insert a flat screwdriver into the cut-out to unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ☞ Unblock the lamp fixing nut with a 10 mm box spanner.
- ☞ Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining clip, while pushing the lamp out slightly.



- ☞ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector by pressing on each side.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Fog lamps



These bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper:

- ☞ pass your hand under the bumper,
- ☞ turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it,

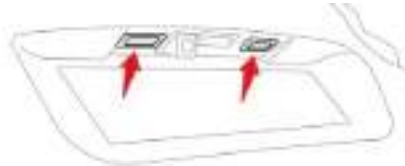
☞ turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it. To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! If changing a bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust – risk of burns!

Third brake lamp (LED)

For the replacement of this type of diode bulb, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Number plate lamps (W5W)



- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
 - ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
 - ☞ Remove the lens.
 - ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

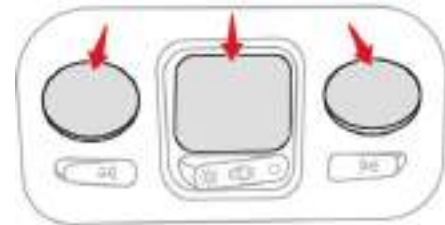
Interior lighting

Courtesy lamps

Front courtesy lamp



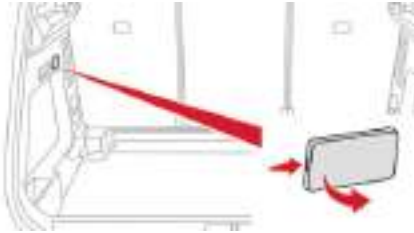
Rear courtesy lamp



For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

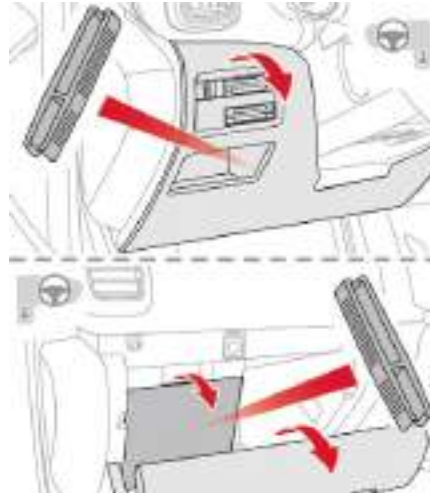
In the event of a breakdown

Boot (W5W)



- ☞ Unclip the unit using a small flat blade screwdriver.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.
- ☞ Put the unit back in place.

Changing a fuse Access to the tools



The extraction tweezers are located behind the dashboard fusebox cover.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.

Replacing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the allocation tables and the diagrams on the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Replacement with a fuse not shown in the allocation tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good

Failed



Tweezers

Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

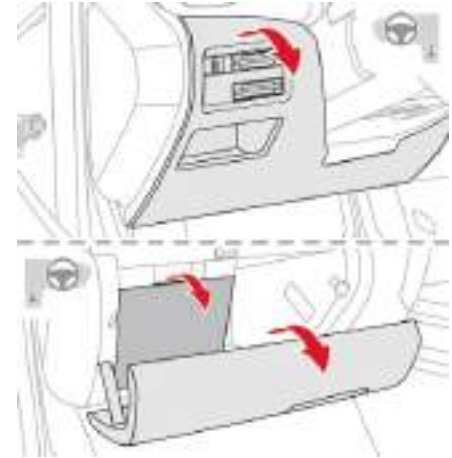
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses

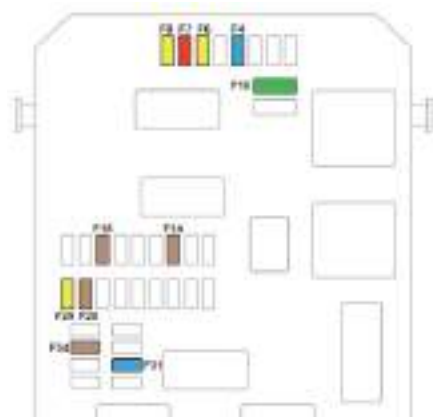
The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses



☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top.

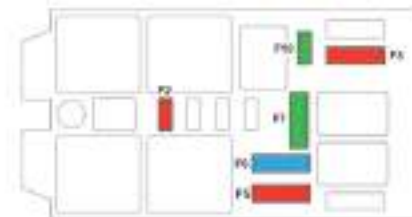
Lower fusebox



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F4	15	Horn.
F6	20	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F7	10	12 V rear USB socket
F8	20	Rear wiper.
F10	30	Locking/unlocking of the doors and fuel filler flap.

F14	5	Alarm (unit).
F18	5	Trailer power supply.
F28	5	Alarm (siren), additional heating/ventilation remote control receiver.
F29	20	Touch screen (CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav).
F31	10	Cigarette lighter/front 12 V accessory socket.
F34	5	Wireless smartphone charger.

Upper fusebox

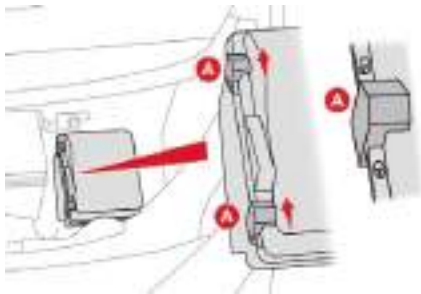


Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	10	Heated door mirrors.
F3	40	Rear one-touch electric windows.
F5	40	Front one-touch electric windows.
F6	15	12 V socket in boot.
F7	30	Front heated seats.
F10	30	Panoramic opening sunroof.

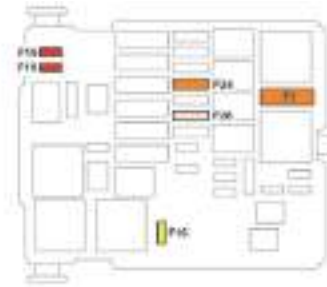
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- ☞ Release the two latches **A**.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	40	Air conditioning ventilation motor.
F16	20	Heated windscreen
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	40	Trailer power supply.
F26	25	Front foglamps.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ unlock the bonnet by activating the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- ☞ raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed near the battery.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

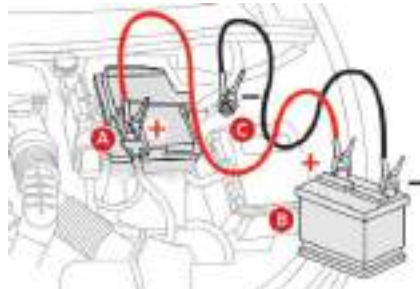
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are not close to the moving parts of the engine (fan, belt, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

- ☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
 - ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
 - ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
 - ☞ Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ☞ Wait for it to return to idle.
 - ☞ Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
 - ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
 - ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- using the vehicle mainly for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

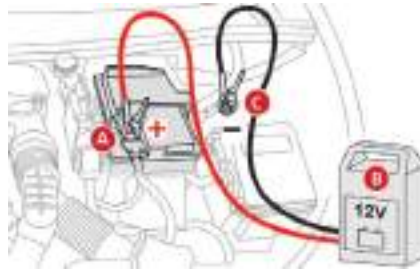
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ☞ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ If the vehicle has one, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),

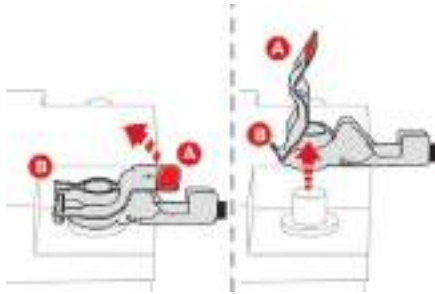
In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

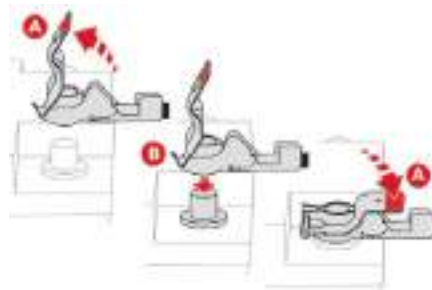
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Replace the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

! Do not apply force when pressing the lever, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will be impossible; start the procedure again.

After reconnecting the battery

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Referring to the corresponding section, you must reinitialise certain systems yourself, such as:

- the key with remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the sunroof and its electric blind,
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the preset radio stations.

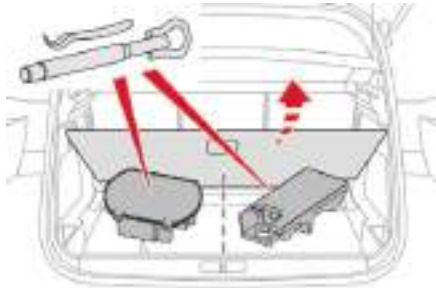
i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

Access to the tools

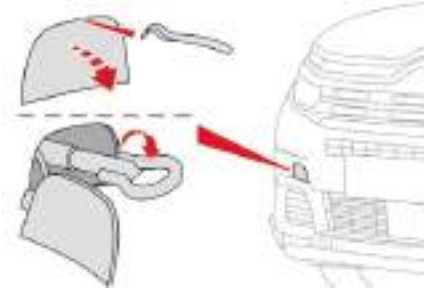


The towing eye is stored in a toolbox, under the boot floor.

The opening tool for the rear protective cover is secured to the towing eye.

For more information on the **Vehicle tools**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle



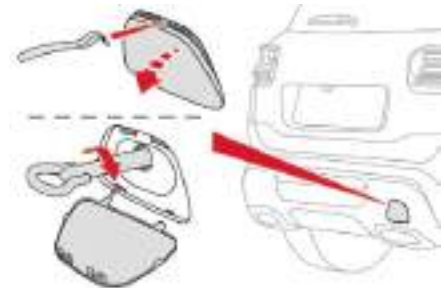
- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by using the tool fixed on the towing eye.
- ☞ Release the cover to the right and then downwards.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.

- ! ☞ Put the gearbox into neutral. Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ! Automatic gearbox: never tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground with the engine off.

- ☞ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by using the tool fixed on the eye.
- ☞ Pull the cover downwards.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

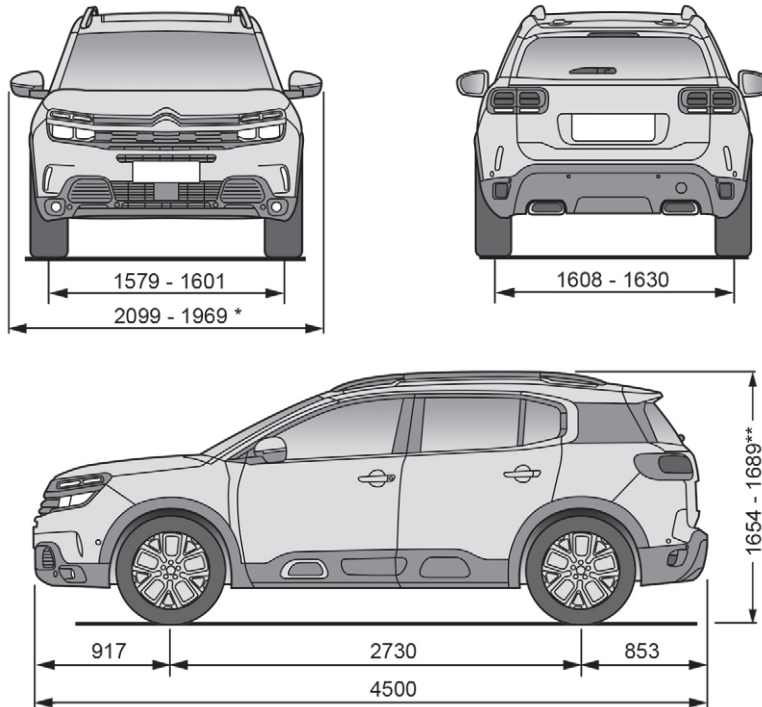
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or main road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



* Mirrors folded in.

** Version with longitudinal bars.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork structure.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windshield.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This tamperproof label is affixed to the right-hand door aperture.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight (GVW),
- the gross train weight (GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres/paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information about the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads – Petrol

Engines	1.6 THP 165 (Euro 5)		PureTech 130 S&S	PureTech 175 S&S
Gearboxes	EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)		EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	EP6FDTMD – AT6III		EB2ADTS STTd MB6E	EP6FADTXD STTd ATN8
Model codes J...	5GS – 5GY	5GX	HNS	5GF
Cubic capacity (cm ³)	1,598	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110	121	96	133
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	550	550	1,350	1,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)	550	550	739	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	64	64	54	64

Engines and towed loads – Diesel

Engines	BlueHDi 130 S&S		2.0 HDi 180 (Euro 5)	BlueHDi 180 S&S
	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	DV5RC STTd ML6C	DV5RC STTd ATN8	DW10FC – AMN8	DW10FC STTa AMN8
Model codes J...	YHZ	YHZ	EHZ	EHZ
Cubic capacity (cm ³)	1,499	1,499	1,997	1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	96	130	130
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,450	1,250	1,650	1,650
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	58	50	66	66

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Applications	5
Radio	5
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	7
Media	8
Telephone	10
Settings	14
Frequently asked questions	16

i The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

! For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Using a smartphone.
- Pairing a Bluetooth mobile phone to the hands-free Bluetooth system of the audio system.
- Smartphone connection operations for CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto (certain applications interrupt their display when the vehicle starts to move again).
- The configuration of profiles.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to the OSS (Open Source Software) code for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
 With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right. Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
 To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
 Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
 Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selection of the audio source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu it is possible to create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering multiple settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
 The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:



Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.
 Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Voice commands:



This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

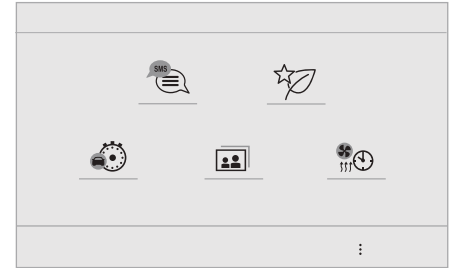
Menus

Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Access configurable equipment.

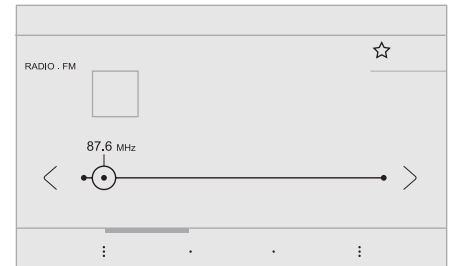


Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Select an audio source or radio station.

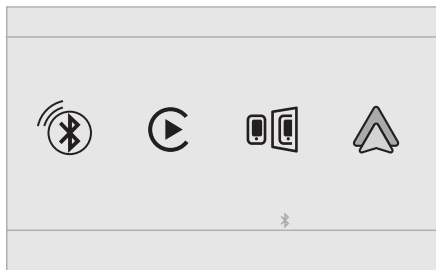


Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

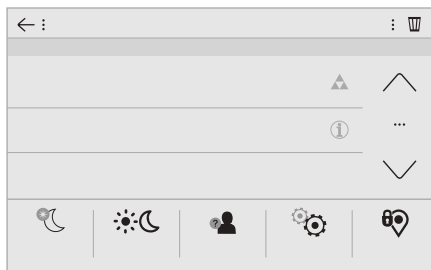


Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

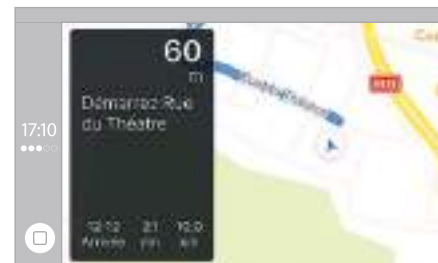


Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

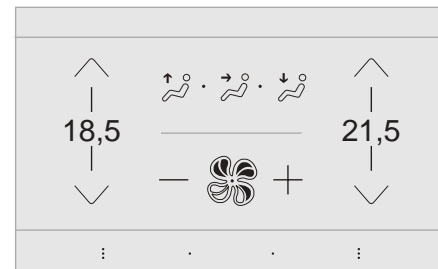


Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp;. png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for and select a recipient.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**INFO**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Playing TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources. In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.



On-board audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio



Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB tracking



"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB tracking**".

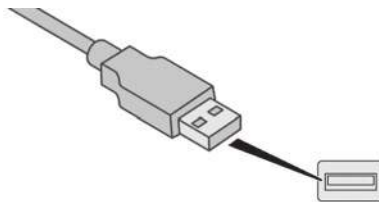


Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system. Management of the controls is via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/ albums/genres/playlists/audio books/ podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is via the audio system controls. Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is recommended that file names are less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"TEL"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to the smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"TEL"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode, a change of source will have to be done manually.



It is possible to go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection



On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

i Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Audio streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Internet data"**.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for the telephone and with the service provider for the available services.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the **"TEL"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press **"End call"**.

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Parking the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press **"Call"** to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Press **"Contacts"**.

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press **"Call"**.

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press **"Recent calls"**.

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Ring volume"** to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Setting the profiles



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Profiles"**.

Select **"Profile 1"** or **"Profile 2"** or **"Profile 3"** or **"Common profile"**.



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press **"OK"** to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

Adjusting brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the "**Privacy**" tab,

or



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.



Activate or deactivate:

- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**".
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OKPress "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.Press "**Date and time**".Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87,5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.</p>	<p>Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.</p>
	<p>Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	It is possible to check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Change the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience is deselected.</p> <p>When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.</p> <p>When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.</p>	<p>The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.</p>

CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Voice commands	4
Navigation	12
Connected navigation	14
Applications	17
Radio	20
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	22
Media	22
Telephone	24
Settings	28
Frequently asked questions	30

i The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

! For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition switched off:

- Using a smartphone.
- Pairing a Bluetooth mobile phone to the hands-free Bluetooth system of the audio system.
- Smartphone connection operations for CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto (certain applications interrupt their display when the vehicle starts to move again).
- Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
- The configuration of profiles.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to the OSS (Open Source Software) code for the system.

<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

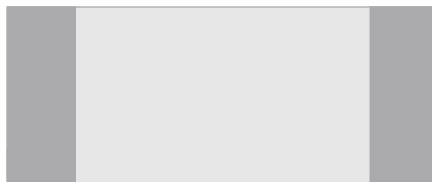
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the back arrow to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

- !** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selection of the audio source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



- i** Using the "Settings" menu, create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common interests, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

- i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.

- Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Connected navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available depending on the country) or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

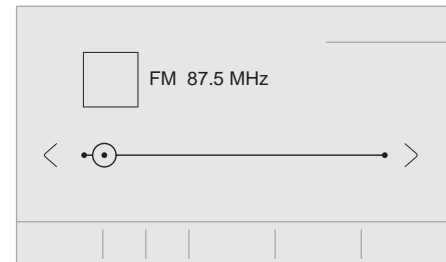


Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

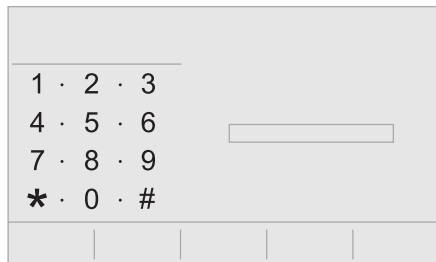


Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

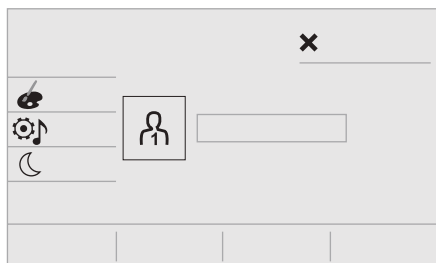


Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

Voice commands can be made from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist Madonna"

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller" "

! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms. Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/... The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

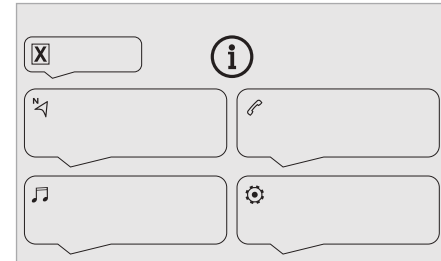
Information – Using the system



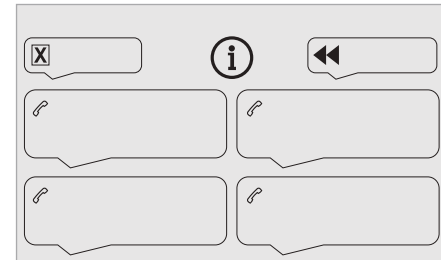
Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.





When the voice commands are activated by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and allowing interaction with the system by voice.





After a menu has been selected, some commands are proposed.



Global voice commands

 Voice commands	 Help messages
	<p>There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".</p>
	<p>Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.</p>
Set dialogue mode as novice – expert	
Select user 1/Select profile John	
Increase temperature	
Decrease temperature	



"Navigation" voice commands


 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	<p>To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".</p> <p>To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club	
Navigate to contact, John Miller	
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London	
Tell me the remaining distance	<p>You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".</p>
Tell me the remaining time	
Tell me the arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Show POI hotel at the destination	<p>To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".</p> <p>To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".</p>
Show nearby POI petrol station	
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London	
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route	

i Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.



"Radio Media" voice commands

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Turn on source radio – Streaming Bluetooth - ...	You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Tune to channel BBC Radio 2 Tune to 98.5 FM Tune to preset number five	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing?	To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play song Hey Jude	I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller".
Play artist Madonna	To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play album Thriller	To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

 Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected via Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call David Miller*	<p>To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".</p> <p>To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
Call voicemail*	
Display calls*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected via Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

i The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to make a short pause between each word. At the end of the operation, the voice recognition system will automatically create an SMS.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late	From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Listen to most recent message*	To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out/in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the house number, the navigation system will show one of the ends of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.



A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

To GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.



Press this button to display the world map.

Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.



Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or




Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And

 Press this button to enter the value for "Longitude" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



i For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

Connected navigation connection

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the internet, to the connected services, and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

i Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

USB connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.

i This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.



Press "**Notifications**".



Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.

i Usage restrictions:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services will be available.

- i** The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
 - Filling stations,
 - Car park,
 - Traffic,
 - POI local search.
- A Danger zone pack (as an option).

- i** Processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, it is recommended to **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Display recommended speed"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Advise of car park nearby"**, **"Filling station alert"**, **"Risk areas alert"**, **"Accident black spot alert"** then select the alert symbol, **"Give an audible warning"**, **"Advise proximity of POI 1"**, **"Advise proximity of POI 2"**.



To have access to connected navigation, select the option: **"Authorise sending information"** in "Settings".

i It is possible to access the "Notifications" at any time in the upper bar.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Notification of "Danger zones"

! To issue notification of danger zones, select the option: "**Allow notification of danger zones**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Report a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger zone".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

Authorising sending information



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**Privacy mode**" tab.



Activate or deactivate:

- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**".
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**".

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".

i It is possible to download system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure is also available there.

i After the updates have downloaded, installation on the vehicle must be done with the engine running and vehicle stationary.

Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the **CarPlay**® technology, the **CarPlay**® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the **CarPlay**® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the **CarPlay**® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the **CarPlay**® function deactivates the system's **Bluetooth**® mode.

i When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to **Radio Media** mode, a change of source will have to be done manually.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "Applications" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to the smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "Applications" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Vehicle apps



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Vehicle apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet browser**" function.

Press "**Internet browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select the country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".



The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on the smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".



Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi connection sharing**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect against unauthorised access and to make the set of systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.

First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

To change the waveband, press "Band..." displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "Band..." at the top right of the screen to display the **"DAB"** waveband.

DAB-FM tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Radio settings"**.

Select **"General"**.



Activate/deactivate **"FM-DAB tracking"**.



Activate/deactivate **"Station tracking"**.

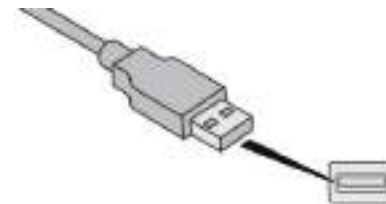
OK

Press **"OK"**.

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Management of the controls is via the portable device.

CD player

Depending on equipment

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".
Choose the source.

Watching a video

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.



Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Sources**".



Select **Video** to start the video.



To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.



The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is via the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is recommended that file names are less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

CD player (depending on equipment).

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

i Activation of the "**Mobile internet data**" profile is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on the smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection



On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for the telephone and with the service provider for the available services.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check the user guide for the smartphone and with the service provider for the available services.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtones**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Setting the profiles



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB socket. Select the photograph.



Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.



Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0

Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

! Reinitialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic text scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Resetting the system to "**Factory settings**" activates English by default, as well as degrees Fahrenheit, and turns off summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.


OK


Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.

 Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	Other than navigation instructions, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	<p>Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.</p>
---	---	--

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
<p>Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).</p>	<p>Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).</p>	<p>Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.</p>
<p>The CD is ejected every time or is not played.</p>	<p>The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.</p>	<p>Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content if it is a burned CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD player does not play DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.</p>

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new external media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	It is possible to check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The sound from the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Change the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance:) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

A

Accessories89
 Access to rear seats55
 Active Safety Brake 17, 156-157, 159
 AdBlue® 16, 28, 194-195
 AdBlue® tank196
 Additive, Diesel 191-192
 Adjusting headlamps84
 Adjusting head restraints 54-55
 Adjusting seats 55-56
 Adjusting the air distribution 64-67
 Adjusting the air flow 63, 65-67
 Adjusting the date 34, 16, 29
 Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel58
 Adjusting the lumbar support55
 Adjusting the seat belt height98
 Adjusting the temperature63, 65
 Adjusting the time 34, 15, 30
 Advanced Grip Control 95-96
 Advice on care and maintenance194
 Advice on driving 116-117
 Airbags 19, 101, 103, 106
 Airbags, curtain102-103
 Airbags, front101-103, 106
 Airbags, lateral102-103
 Air conditioning 62-64, 67
 Air conditioning, automatic65, 68
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic64, 67
 Air conditioning, manual63-64
 Air intake 65-66
 Air vents61
 Alarm 49-51
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 91-92
 Anti-slip regulation (ASR) 18, 91-96
 Anti-theft/Immobiliser 40, 118
 Apple CarPlay connection 11, 17
 Armrest, front73-74
 Assistance call 90-91
 Assistance, emergency braking 91-92, 158
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 8-9, 23

B

Battery 186, 215, 217-218
 Battery, 12 V 192, 215-217
 Battery, charging217
 Battery, remote control 41-43, 70
 Blind 52-53
 Blind spot monitoring system, active165
 Blind spot sensors 164-166
 BlueHDI 14, 28-29, 192, 197
 Bluetooth (hands-free) 12, 24-25
 Bluetooth (telephone) 12-13, 24-26
 Bonnet188-189
 Boot 44-45, 47, 78
 Brake discs193
 Brake lamps210
 Brakes 13, 193
 Braking assistance system 91-92
 Braking, automatic emergency... 17, 156-157, 159
 Brightness14
 Bulbs207
 Bulbs (changing) 206-207, 210-211

C

Cable, audio23
 Cable, Jack23
 Capacity, fuel tank180
 Cap, fuel filler180
 CD8, 23
 CD, MP38, 23
 Central locking 36, 39
 Changing a bulb 206-207, 210-211
 Changing a fuse 212-213, 215
 Changing a wheel 198-199, 203
 Changing a wiper blade87
 Changing the remote control battery42
 Charger, induction72-73
 Charger, wireless72-73
 CHECK29
 Checking the engine oil level27
 Checking the levels189-191

Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 199-200, 202
 Checks 189, 192-193
 Checks, routine 192-193
 Child lock115
 Children 110-114
 Children (safety)115
 Child seats 100, 104-105, 107, 109-110
 Child seats, conventional109-110
 Child seats, i-Size114
 Child seats, ISOFIX 111-114
 Cigarette lighter72
 CITROËN Connect Nav1
 CITROËN Connect Radio1
 Cleaning (advice)194
 Closing the boot39, 44-45
 Closing the doors39, 44
 Coffee Break Alert160
 Collision Risk Alert156-158
 Configuration, vehicle33
 Connection, Bluetooth 12-13, 19, 24-26
 Connection, MirrorLink10-11, 18
 Connection, Wi-Fi network19
 Control stalk, lighting79, 81
 Control stalk, wipers85-86, 88
 Controls, steering mounted125-129
 Control, back-up boot release45, 48
 Control, back-up door41-42
 Control, heated seats57
 Courtesy lamp211
 Courtesy lamps75
 Cover, load space76
 Cruise control140-141, 144-146
 Cruise control by speed limit recognition140-141
 Cruise control, adaptive147
 Cruise control, adaptive with Stop function140-141
 Cup holder71

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) –	
Digital radio.....	7, 22
Date (setting).....	34, 16, 29
Daytime running lamps.....	79, 81, 209
Deactivating the front passenger	
airbag.....	102, 106
Deadlocking.....	37, 40
Defrosting.....	68-69
Defrosting, front.....	68
Demisting.....	68
Demisting, front.....	68
Demisting, rear.....	68
Demisting, rear screen.....	68
Dials and gauges.....	8-9
Dimensions.....	221
Dipstick.....	27, 190
Direction indicators.....	80-81, 208, 210
Display screen, instrument panel.....	130
Door pockets.....	71
Doors.....	44
Driver Attention Alert.....	160
Driving.....	116-117
Driving aids camera (warnings).....	136
Driving aids (recommendations).....	135
Driving positions (storing).....	56-57
Dynamic stability control (DSC).....	18, 91-96

E

Economy mode.....	186
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....	91-92
Emergency braking assistance (EBA).....	91-92
Emergency call.....	90-91
Emergency switching off.....	121
Emissions control system, SCR.....	29, 194
Energy economy mode.....	186
Engine compartment.....	189
Engines.....	222-224
Engine, Diesel.....	14, 19, 181, 189, 197, 224
Engine, petrol.....	189, 223

Environment.....	43, 70
ESC (electronic stability control).....	91
Extended traffic sign recognition.....	141

F

Fatigue detection.....	159-160
Filling the AdBlue® tank.....	192, 196
Filling the fuel tank.....	180
Filter, air.....	192
Filter, oil.....	192
Filter, particle.....	191-192
Filter, passenger compartment.....	62, 192
Fitting a wheel.....	203-206
Fitting roof bars.....	187-188
Fittings, boot.....	76
Fittings, interior.....	71
Flap, fuel filler.....	180
Floor, boot, adjustable.....	77
Fluid, brake.....	191
Fluid, engine coolant.....	191
Foglamps, front.....	79, 85, 209
Foglamps, rear.....	22, 79, 211
Folding the rear seats.....	60-61
Frequency (radio).....	21
Fuel.....	181
Fuel tank.....	180
Fusebox, dashboard.....	212-213
Fusebox, engine compartment.....	212-213, 215
Fuses.....	212-213, 215

G

Gauge, fuel.....	180
Gearbox, automatic.....	8, 125-130, 132, 193, 216
Gearbox, manual.....	8, 125, 130, 132, 193
Gear lever, automatic gearbox.....	129
Gear lever, manual gearbox.....	125
Gear efficiency indicator.....	130
Glove box.....	71

G.P.S.....	13
Grab handles.....	55, 71

H

Hands-free access.....	47
Hands-free tailgate.....	45, 47
Hazard warning lamps.....	89, 197
Headlamp adjustment.....	84
Headlamps, automatic dipping.....	24, 83-84
Headlamps, automatic illumination.....	81-82
Headlamps, dipped beam.....	24, 79, 208-209
Headlamps, halogen.....	84, 207
Headlamps, main beam.....	24-25, 79, 208-209
Head restraints, front.....	54-55
Head restraints, rear.....	60-61
Heating.....	61, 64, 69-70
Heating, additional.....	69-70
Heating, programmable.....	69-70
Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC).....	96-97
Hill start assist.....	129-130
Horn.....	90

I

Ignition.....	119, 121, 27
Ignition on.....	121
Immobiliser, electronic.....	41, 118
Indicators, direction.....	80, 208
Indicator, AdBlue® range.....	28
Indicator, coolant temperature.....	27
Indicator, engine oil level.....	27, 29
Inflating tyres.....	193
Inflating tyres (using the kit).....	199-200, 202
Infrared camera.....	136
Instrument panel.....	8-10, 29, 31, 137
Intelligent Traction Control.....	92
Internet browser.....	19
ISOFIX.....	111-112

J

Jack 198-199, 203, 23
 Jump starting 216

K

Key 35, 40-42
 Keyless Entry and Starting 37-41, 120
 Key not recognised 121
 Key with remote control 35-36, 118
 Key, electronic 37-39
 Kit, hands-free 12, 24-25
 Kit, temporary puncture repair 198-200, 202

L

Labels, identification 221
 Lamps, front 194
 Lamps, parking 81
 Lamps, rear 194, 210
 Lamp, boot 78, 212
 Lane departure warning system, active ... 17, 161
 Lane Keeping Assist, Active ... 147, 151-153, 156
 Leather (care) 194
 LEDs – Light-emitting diodes ... 81, 207, 209-211
 Levels and checks 189-191
 Level, AdBlue® 192
 Level, brake fluid 191
 Level, Diesel additive 191-192
 Level, engine coolant 27, 191
 Level, engine oil 27, 190
 Level, screenwash fluid 87, 191
 Light-emitting diodes – LEDs ... 81, 207, 209-211
 Lighting dimmer 30
 Lighting, cornering 85
 Lighting, directional 85
 Lighting, guide-me home 37, 82
 Lighting, interior 75
 Lighting, ambience 75
 Lighting, welcome 82
 Loading 77, 187

Load reduction mode 186
 Load space cover 76
 Locating your vehicle 37
 Locking 39-41
 Locking from the inside 41
 Locking the doors 41
 Low fuel level 180
 Lumbar 55

M

Maintenance (advice) 194
 Maintenance, routine 137, 192
 Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 135
 Map reading lamps 75
 Markings, identification 221
 Massage function 57-58
 Massage, multi-point 57-58
 Mat 74, 137
 Memorising a speed 146
 Menu 11
 Menu short cuts 33
 Menus (audio) 3-4, 3-4
 Menu, main 33
 Messages 27
 Messages, quick 27
 Mirrors, door 58-59, 68, 164-166
 Mirror, rear view 59-60
 Mirror, vanity 71
 Misfuel prevention 180
 Motorised tailgate 45-47
 Mountings, ISOFIX 111

N

Net, high load retaining 77
 Number plate lamps 211

O

Obstacle detection 167
 Oil change 190
 Oil consumption 190
 Oil, engine 190
 On-board tools 78, 198-199
 Opening the bonnet 188
 Opening the boot 38, 44-45
 Opening the doors 38, 44
 Opening the fuel filler flap 180
 Opening the windows 36

P

Pads, brake 193
 Paint 221
 Paint colour code 221
 Park Assist 173-174, 176
 Parking brake, electric 13, 18, 21-22, 121-124, 193
 Parking sensors, audible and visual 167
 Parking sensors, front 167
 Parking sensors, rear 167
 Personalisation 9-10
 Plates, identification 221
 Player, Apple® 9, 23
 Player, MP3 CD 23
 Player, USB 8, 22
 Power steering 23
 Pre-heater, Diesel 19
 Pressures, tyres 193, 202
 Pre-tensioning seat belts 100
 Priming the fuel system 197-198
 Profiles 14, 28
 Programmable cruise control 144
 Programmable speed limiter 142
 Protecting children ... 101-102, 104-107, 110-114
 Puncture 199-200, 202-203

R

Radar (warnings).....	136
Radio	5-6, 8, 20-21, 23
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)	7, 22
Range, AdBlue.....	28, 192
RDS.....	6, 21
Rear screen, demisting.....	68-69
Recharging the battery	217
Recirculation, air.....	65-67
Recovery	219
Reduction of electrical load.....	186
Regeneration of the particle filter.....	192
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.....	133-134
Reinitialising the remote control	43
Reminder, key in ignition.....	119
Reminder, lighting on	80
Remote control.....	35-37, 39-41
Removing a wheel	203-206
Removing the mat.....	74
Replacing bulbs	206-207, 210-211
Replacing fuses	212-213
Replacing the air filter.....	192
Replacing the oil filter	192
Replacing the passenger compartment filter...	192
Reservoir, screenwash	191
Resetting the service indicator	26-27
Resetting the trip recorder.....	30
Reset trip.....	31
Rev counter.....	8-9
Reversing camera.....	136, 168-169, 171
Reversing lamps	210
Roof bars.....	187-188
Running out of fuel (Diesel)	197-198

S

Safety, children	101-102, 104-107, 110-114
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel).....	192
Screen menu map.....	11
Screenwash, front.....	86
Screenwash, rear.....	86
Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR).....	29, 194
Seat belts	13, 98-100, 109
Seats, electric.....	56-57
Seats, front.....	54-57
Seats, heated.....	57
Seats, rear.....	60-61
Selector, gear.....	125-129
Sensors (warnings).....	137
Serial number, vehicle	221
Service indicator	26-27, 29
Service (warning lamp).....	14
Servicing	14, 26, 26-27, 192
Settings, equipment.....	33
Settings, system.....	15, 29
Sidelamps	79, 81, 209-210
Side repeater	209
Snow chains.....	186
Socket, 12 V accessory	72, 76
Socket, auxiliary.....	8, 23
Socket, Jack.....	23
Socket, USB.....	72, 8, 22
Speed limiter	140-143, 146
Speed limit recognition	137, 140
Speedometer	8-9, 137
Spotlamps, side	209
Stability control (ESC).....	91-92, 94-96
Starting a Diesel engine	181
Starting the engine	118
Starting the vehicle ...	18, 21-22, 118-120, 125-129
Starting using another battery.....	121, 216
Station, radio.....	5-6, 20-21
Stay, bonnet	188-189
Steering mounted controls, audio	2-3, 2
Steering wheel, adjustment	58
Stopping the vehicle	18, 21-22, 118-120, 125-129

STOP (warning lamp).....	12
Stop & Start.....	23, 32, 63, 68, 130, 132, 180, 188, 192, 218
Storage.....	71, 73-74, 76
Storage box.....	78
Storage compartments	71
Storage wells	76, 78
Storing driving positions	56-57
Stowing rings	76
Sunroof, panoramic	52-53
Sunshine sensor	62
Sun visor	71
Switching off the engine	118
Synchronising the remote control.....	43

T

Tables of engines	223-224
Tables of fuses.....	212-213, 215
Tank, fuel.....	180
Technical data	223-224
Telephone	72-73, 12-14, 24-27
Temperature, coolant.....	12, 27
Third brake lamp	211
Three flashes (direction indicators).....	80
Ticket holder	71
Time (setting)	34, 15, 30
TMC (Traffic info)	14
Tool kit	78, 198-199
Top 360 Vision	168, 171
Topping up AdBlue®.....	196
Top Rear Vision.....	168-169
Total distance recorder	30
Touch screen.....	1, 1
Towbar.....	94, 182
Towbar with quickly detachable towball ...	183-185
Towed loads	222
Towing another vehicle	219
Traffic information (TMC).....	14
Trailer	94, 182

Trailer stability assist (TSA).....94
 Trajectory control systems..... 91-92
 Triangle, warning.....197
 Trip computer 31-32
 Trip distance recorder.....30
 Tyres.....193
 Tyre under-inflation detection..... 19, 132, 202

U

Under-inflation (detection) 19, 132, 202
 Unlocking 35-36, 38
 Unlocking from the inside 41
 Unlocking the boot36, 38
 Unlocking the doors.....41
 Unlocking the tailgate36, 38
 Updating the date.....34, 16, 29
 Updating the time.....34, 15, 30
 USB 8, 22-23

V

Ventilation61-62, 64, 69-70
 Visibility68
 Vision, 180° forward 171
 Vision, 180° rear 171
 Voice commands 4-7, 9-11

W

Warning and indicator lamps 11, 12
 Warning lamps 11, 29
 Warning lamp, airbag..... 19
 Warning lamp, braking system 13
 Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 19
 Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not fastened...99
 Warning lamp, low fuel level20
 Warning lamp, parking brake..... 13
 Warning lamp, seat belts99
 Warning lamp, Service..... 14

Warning lamp, STOP 12
 Washing 137
 Washing (advice).....194
 Weights222
 Welcome lighting..... 37, 82
 Wheel, spare 193, 198-199, 203
 Window controls 51
 Windscreen, heated.....68
 Wiper blades (changing)87
 Wipers 25, 85, 88
 Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....86, 88
 Wiper, rear.....86

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.



iNspIRED BY YOU



ANG. 18C84.0040